



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



# *A first Latin reader*

Herbert Chester Nutting  
Digitized by Google

EdneT 919.12.620

**Harvard College Library**



**LIBRARY OF THE  
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION**

**COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS  
CONTRIBUTED BY THE PUBLISHERS**

**TRANSFERRED**

**TO**

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



3 2044 097 074 264



# *A first Latin reader*

Herbert Chester Nutting

Digitized by Google







# A FIRST LATIN READER

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA



NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

F+3.6949

Edue T Harvard University  
919.12.620 Sept. of Education Library

✓

MAY 12 1913

TRANSFERRED TO  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
June 12, 1913

COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY  
H. C. NUTTING

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

NUTTING. LATIN READER.  
W.P. I

## PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1-45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492-1783, and the second group (46-100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101-125), and the concluding series (126-140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

### EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

PAGE	PAGE		
1. Christopher Columbus . . . . .	1	23. William Penn and the Friends . . . . .	26
2. Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	2	24. Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia . . . . .	27
3. Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	3	25. Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	28
4. Christopher Columbus ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	4	26. Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	30
5. The Cabots . . . . .	5	27. The Boyhood of George Washington . . . . .	31
6. Captain John Smith . . . . .	6	28. Experiences on the Frontier . . . . .	32
7. Captain John Smith ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	6	29. A Dangerous Mission . . . . .	33
8. Captain John Smith ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	7	30. A Dangerous Mission ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	34
9. Captain John Smith ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	10	31. The Beginning of the French and Indian War . . . . .	35
10. Pocahontas . . . . .	11	32. Braddock's Defeat . . . . .	36
11. Henry Hudson . . . . .	12	33. Later Events of the War . . . . .	37
12. Henry Hudson ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	13	34. The Outbreak of the Revolution . . . . .	38
13. Colonization in New England . . . . .	14	35. Operations about Boston . . . . .	39
14. A Soldier's Courtship . . . . .	16	36. The Battles of Long Island and Trenton . . . . .	41
15. Unrest among the Indians . . . . .	17	37. The Retreat from Trenton . . . . .	42
16. Old Friends become Enemies . . . . .	18	38. Burgoyne's Campaign . . . . .	43
17. The Outbreak of King Philip's War . . . . .	20	39. Valley Forge . . . . .	44
18. A Remarkable Deliverance . . . . .	21	40. Help from France . . . . .	45
19. Philip finds Allies . . . . .	22	41. Benedict Arnold . . . . .	46
20. Captain Church . . . . .	23	42. A Roman who fought against his Country . . . . .	48
21. The Death of Philip . . . . .	24	43. The Surrender of Cornwallis . . . . .	49
22. End of the War . . . . .	25	44. Washington retires to Private Life . . . . .	51
	vii	45. The Father of his Country . . . . .	52

## TALES OF LAND AND SEA

PAGE	PAGE		
46. The Settler's Daughter . . . . .	54	74. The Treasure Seekers . . . . .	88
47. The Trials of War . . . . .	55	75. A Dangerous Conspiracy . . . . .	90
48. The Attempt to surprise Detroit . . . . .	56	76. A Dangerous Conspiracy <i>(continued)</i> . . . . .	91
49. The Attempt to surprise Detroit ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	57	77. A Quick-Witted Messenger . . . . .	92
50. A Successful Ruse . . . . .	58	78. Fortune favors the Brave . . . . .	93
51. How the Town was Saved . . . . .	59	79. Andrew Jackson . . . . .	94
52. An Example of Fortitude . . . . .	61	80. Pirates Ashore . . . . .	95
53. A Hasty Leave-Taking . . . . .	62	81. Carrying the Tribute . . . . .	97
54. The Capture of a Man-of-War . . . . .	63	82. A Successful Ambuscade . . . . .	98
55. The Fall of New London . . . . .	64	83. An Intrepid Commander . . . . .	99
56. The Fall of New London ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	65	84. Burned at the Stake . . . . .	101
57. Captivity among the Indians . . . . .	67	85. An Early Morning Surprise . . . . .	102
58. A Fresh Supply of Powder . . . . .	68	86. Some Very Distinguished Geese . . . . .	103
59. A Battle against Great Odds . . . . .	69	87. An Army of Two . . . . .	104
60. A Night Attack . . . . .	70	88. Horatius at the Bridge . . . . .	105
61. A Choice of Evils . . . . .	71	89. A Favor Repaid . . . . .	108
62. Lost in the Woods . . . . .	72	90. An Earthquake in Colonial Times . . . . .	109
63. The Battle of Saratoga . . . . .	73	91. Evils of the Slave Trade . . . . .	110
64. Unwelcome Visitors . . . . .	74	92. A Pirate Outdone . . . . .	111
65. The Boyhood of Daniel Boone . . . . .	76	93. Colonization in Africa . . . . .	112
66. The End of the Pequots . . . . .	78	94. A Prize Won and Lost . . . . .	113
67. The End of the Pequots ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	79	95. A Prize Won and Lost ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	114
68. A Difficult Escape . . . . .	80	96. A Mysterious Disappearance . . . . .	116
69. Stories about Daniel Boone . . . . .	81	97. Early Days in Liberia . . . . .	118
70. An English Privateer . . . . .	82	98. An Experience with Robbers . . . . .	119
71. A Roman Vandal . . . . .	83	99. The Capture of Stony Point . . . . .	120
72. Indian Vengeance . . . . .	86	100. Nathan Hale . . . . .	121
73. A Tale of Brave Women . . . . .	87		

## STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

## THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

101. Unexpected Trouble . . . . .	123	103. Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp . . . . .	126
102. A Parley with the Enemy . . . . .	125		

PAGE	PAGE		
104. The Advice of the Enemy is Taken . . . . .	127	111. A Messenger eludes the Enemy . . . . .	137
105. The Romans are Ambushed	128	112. Caesar heads a Relief Force	138
106. The Enemy Prevail . . . . .	130	113. The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach . . . . .	139
107. Annihilation of the Roman Force . . . . .	131	114. The Enemy raise the Siege	141
108. The Gauls attack a Second Camp . . . . .	133	115. They are Outgeneraled by Caesar . . . . .	142
109. The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar	134	116. Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter . . . . .	143
110. Heroic Defense of their Camp . . . . .	135		

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

117. Caesar lands a Force in Africa . . . . .	145	122. Narrow Escape of their Commander . . . . .	152
118. Operations about Utica . . . . .	147	123. King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus . . . . .	154
119. Curio gains an Initial Advantage . . . . .	148	124. The Numidians resort to Strategy . . . . .	155
120. He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar . . . . .	149	125. Curio's Army is Annihilated	156
121. The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse . . . . .	151		

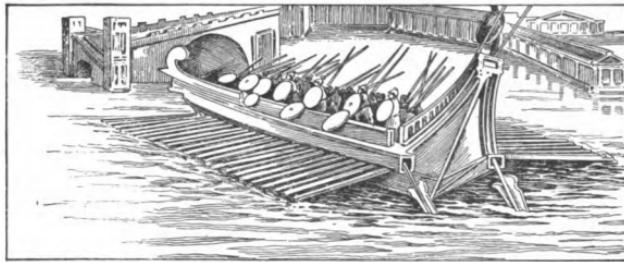
## SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

126-128. An Episode from the Gallic War . . . . .	158	131. The Death of Caesar . . . . .	166
129-130. An Episode from the Civil War . . . . .	163	132-133. The Fate of Hannibal . . . . .	169
		134-136. Catiline's Conspiracy . . . . .	172
		137-140. On the Eastern Frontier	178

WORD LIST . . . . .	186
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	199

## LIST OF MAPS

Gallia . . . . .	124
The Scene of Curio's Campaign in Africa . . . . .	146
Asia Minor . . . . .	179



NAVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

# LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

## EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

### LESSON I

#### *Christopher Columbus*

Quōdam in oppidō Italiae ōlim nātus est puer, quī Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officinā labōrāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad lītus ibat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exibant dīversās. In 5 nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trānsīre saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniām nūllam habēbat. Sed posteā, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Africam nāvigāvit.

Illis temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cur 10 sumque prope lītus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum Africæ ūram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henricus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenire viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Africam prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenire possent.

Line 2. officinā: officina, -ae, f., workshop.      sailed, lit. it had been sailed (impersonal passive).

7. usque ad: all the way to, lit. even to.      12. quā: by which; antecedent, viam.

9. illis temporibus: in those days.      13. possent: could; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

10. interdum: not interim.      In translating the verb possum, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

11. ūram: i.e. lītus (ōra, -ae, F.). — nāvigātum erat: people had

Quidam tum crēdēbant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre cooperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenire; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōni.

## LESSON 2

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Interim Henricus rēx mortuuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniā profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnū obtinētū cōsilium suū aperīret; sed pecūniā, quam petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniā iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellū cum Mauris gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēginā nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniāmque dare. Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, periculum veritī, cum eō nāvigāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Niña, Santaque Marīa appellābantur; cumque

1. *quīdam*: masc. pl., used as a noun.—*rotundam*: *rotundus*, -a, -um, *round*, or *spherical*.

4. *nec*: *and . . . not*.

5. *interpōnī*: lit. *to lie between*.

7. *obtinētū*: pres. part. modifying *rēgī*.

10. *ubi*: (*but*) *there*.

11. *nec quisquam*: *and nobody*.

12. *ubi*: temporal conjunction.

13. *ea*: (neut. pl.) *the things*.

15. *velle*: *was willing*.

16. *laetus*: *gladly*, or *with joy*. A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. *veritī*: perf. part. of *vereor*; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāsset, ad īsulās quāsdam pervaenit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per ignōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

## LESSON 3

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Cum multa mīlia, passuum Columbus nāvigāsset neque  
5 terram vidisset ullam, nautae vehementer timēre coepērunt, quod multa audiverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam posteā redierant; in Hispāniā igitur statim redire volēbant, dux tamen nōluit. Quārē illī pŕimō habuērunt in animō Co-  
10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum animī irātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quidam crēdēbat sē terram vidēre, et omnēs gaudēbant; nūbem autem viderat ille, nōn terram. Sed paucīs post diēbus rāmūm invēnērunt et bācās in marī 15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre. Mox noctū ignem quoque in lītore vīdērunt, ac māne ad īsulam pervaenērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressī paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque īsulās adiit, in 20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen invenire nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. nāvigāsset: *i.e.* nāvigāvis-set.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories).*

11. mītigātī sunt: *were calmed (mitigō, 1).*

13. nūbem: nūbēs, -is, F., *cloud.*

14. paucīs post diēbus: *a few days later,* lit. *afterward by a few days* (abl. of degree of difference).

15. natantēs: pres. part. of natō. — iam: *at length.*

21. potuit: see the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervenisse; quārē incolās eārum īsulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

## LESSON 4

*Christopher Columbus (Concluded)*

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniām reditūrus esset, in insulā quādam colōniām parvam reliquit.  
5 Colōnī tamen iniūriās mox Indis fēcērunt ac brevi ad ūnum ab eis interficti sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scripsit 10 litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdēbat enim nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad litus ventis ferri, cīvēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fieri dē eis īsulis, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniām incolumis pervēnit; ubi rēx et 15 rēgina eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt īsulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvīgāvit. Rem autem haud fēlīciter gessit, inopsque postrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat, 20 Asiae partem esse crēdēbat.

3. *reditūrus esset*: was about to return.

5. *brevi*: i.e. mox.—*ad ūnum*: to a man.

8. *laetus*: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. *dōlia*: dōlium, -ī, N., cask.—*conditās*: freely, he placed . . . (and); lit. what?

12. *certiōrēs fieri*: be informed, or learn, lit. be made more certain. Supply *posse* with this clause.

13. *violentiam*: violentia, -ae, F., force.

14. *incolumis*: for rendering, cf. *laetus*, l. 8.—*ubi*: there.

15. *eius rēbus gestīs*: in his exploits.

16. *praefectum*: cf. the predicate accusative (*Indōs*) with *appellāvit*, l. 2.

18. *inops* (-opis, adj.): in poverty.

## LESSON 5

*The Cabots*

Interim vir quidam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britanniā cum nāve parvā nautisque paucis profectus est atque ad Americam pervenit. Qui nōn sōlum insulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Posteā idem cum filio 5 ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, Indōs vīdit multōs. Interim nautae prope insulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscis cape-rent. Qui, cum domū incolumēs redissent, amīcis suis multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus miris, quās viderant; quīn 10 etiam dixērunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscis raperent.

Cabot filius posteā omnīs in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenire posset; eam tamen viam 15 numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Olim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautis quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās ignōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvis nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. ā: *from*.

3. qui: *he*. — *eam*: *the*.

8. qui, cum: (*and*) *when they*.

— *incolumēs*: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. *multa*: cf. *ea*, p. 2, l. 13, and *multa*, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. *ursās*: *ursa*, -ae, f., *bear*.

12. *filius*: *the younger*.

13. *quā*: abl. of way by which;

cf. *quā*, p. 1, l. 12.

15. *neque*: cf. *nec*, p. 2, l. 4.

16. *diūtius*: (*any*) *longer*.

17. *dīcitur*: lit. *he is said*.  
This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. *profectūrōs esse*: cf. *redi-tūrus esset*, p. 4, l. 3.

## LESSON 6

*Captain John Smith*

Quod colōnī, qui ex Hispāniā in Americam dēducti erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, qui castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indi mox s̄ adortī sunt, sagittisque occidērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope ripam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs, qui sē celeriter in silvās recipere coāctī sunt.

Brevi autem erat periculum etiam maius; nam paene <sup>10</sup> omnīs cōnsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britanniā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucīsque militib⁹ adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.

<sup>15</sup> Posteā dux idēm, cum iterum profectus esset ut inveniret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenire possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem), forteriter pugnāns ab Indīs captus est.

## LESSON 7

*Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Postrēmō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber <sup>20</sup> posteā per litora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.—eā: modifier of terrā: for translation, cf. eām, p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: *these* (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, *in their ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: *up stream*; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -ārum, F., *trifles*.

16. omnēs: *everybody*; cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsire et ita ad Asiam pervenire posset. In itineribus et dux et militēs noctū saepe frigora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō igni et haud procul collocātō, humī iacēre solēbant eōdem 5 locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope litus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolis sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; militēs tamen, cum posteā in litore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus 10 tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdi-dērunt. Dux autem, īnsidiās veritus, militēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrēre; tum, cum Indī perterritī in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad litus vēnērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuērunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, 15 ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dedērunt.

## LESSON 8

*Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Dum haec fīunt, Indī, quī prope colōniām habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. *esse inventūrum*: *would find*.—*quō*: cf. *quā*, p. 1, l. 12.

*corruptus est*: *corrumpō*, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *spoil*.

2. *et . . . et*: *both . . . and*.

9. *corbulās*: *corbula*, -ae, F., *basket*.—*manibus*: for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.

3. *maxima*: for the various renderings of *magnus*, see the Vocab.—*tum*: *at such times*.—

14. *quae*: *these* (noun).

remōtō: *removeō*, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move*.

15. *factī amīcī*: *freely, becoming friendly* (*factī* from *fīō*). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

4. *humī*: *on the ground*; locative case.—*eōdem locō*: the prepositions *in* and *ex* are often lacking with *locō* and *locīs*.

16. *haec*: *these things*.—*fīunt*: in connection with *dum*, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

5. *interdum*: cf. p. 1, l. 10.—*dulcem*: *dulcis*, -is, -e, *fresh*.

17. *rapiēbant*: *would steal*; a common meaning of the impf. indic.

6. *pānis (-is, M.)*: *bread*.—

arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, qui ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse paene sē interfēcit.

Postrēmō ē Britanniā vēnērunt colōnī novī, qui Fabrō, dē quō suprā dīxi, amīci nōn erant. A quibus domum redīre 5 coāctus, numquam posteā ille ad Virginiam revēnit. Sed per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque oīlim pervēnit usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur. Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūris diēs morāti, piscēs cēpērunt multōs, quōs sāle conditōs posteā in Britanniam 10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa mīlia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque ab incolis emēbat.

Qui, cum dēmum in Britanniam redīre vellet, Indōs complūrīs in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi 15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressī sunt, ūnus ē praepositīs Indōs paucōs sē sequī nāvemque iterum cōscendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniā cum captivis miseris profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnārēt, sacerdōtēs quīdam, qui dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs facti 20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captivī servātī sunt.

1. ex: *of*.

2. tractāre: *(how) to handle*.

—ipse . . . sē: *freely, his own self*.

4. domum: *i.e. to England*.

5. revēnit: the prefix re- often means “back”; cf. reportāvērunt (l. 10), redūxit (l. 14), and re(d)-ire (l. 4).

7. usque ad: *as far as*.

8. locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. sāle conditōs: *salted down* (condiō, 4, *season*; sāl, sālis, M., *salt*); conditōs modifies quōs.

11. pellēs: *pellis, -is, F., skin, or pelt*.

13. qui, cum: *when . . . he*. —vellet: *was ready*; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. in nāvēs accēpit: translate freely. —sēcum: *i.e. sē + cum*. —quō: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. est perventum: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. —omnēs: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. praepositīs: *praepositus, -i, M., officer*.

19. certiōrēs facti erant: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

## LESSON 9

*Captain John Smith (Concluded)*

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēdūcere parābat, brevīque cum militibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsiret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene 5 frāctae sunt; quārē domum redire coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāvē parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēliciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātīs procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātæ tamen inventi sunt militēs esse, quōs ipse ōlim in Eurōpā 10 dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucis post diēbus Galli quīdam, quī per maria omnia prae- 15 dam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius nautae, qui domum redire iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās posteā dedērunt cum dēmum redisset Faber, qui cum Gallis diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam posteā ille colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est.

2. ad . . . versus: *for*; cf.  
p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post: *a little later*,  
lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. pau-  
cis post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — pro-  
fectus: cf. the note on facti, p. 7,  
l. 15.

9. inventi sunt . . . esse: *i.e.*  
*proved to be*; lit. what? — Eu-  
rōpā: note the case.

14. morārētur: *was detained*.

15. iam diū: in connection  
with such adverbial words and  
phrases as *iam*, *iam diū*, etc., an  
imperf. has almost the force of a  
pluperf. — dedērunt vēla: sc. *ventis*,  
*i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14.  
— ubi: see the note on p. 4, l.  
14.

## LESSON 10

*Pocahontas*

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūixerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat filia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābatur, colōnōs amāvit, olimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprā multa dixī; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indis captus esset, hostēsque eum interficere vellent, rēgis filiam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multi crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque posteā mentitum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium 10 mīsit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occidere parārent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quīn etiam olim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multi mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt 15 Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, filiā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Qui, cum eam in mātrimōnium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. *cui erat*: freely, *who had*; lit. what?

4. *multa*: much; cf. *multa*, p. 5, l. 9.—*trāditum est*: it is related (*trādō* is short for *trānsdō*, lit. hand over, pass along).

6. *suum*: emphatic position, her own. When a possessive adj. is employed for clearness merely, it is apt to follow the modified

noun; when it precedes the noun, it is often best rendered as *suum* here.

7. *id*: i.e. the incident.—*multi*: cf. the note on *quīdam*, p. 2, l. 1.

15. *prō*: as.

17. *morātur*: for the force of the tense, see the note on *fiunt*, p. 7, l. 16.

## LESSON II

*Henry Hudson*

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, qui volēbant viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmidia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannicum, ducem fēcērunt.

5 Ille prīmō circum Eurōpam nāvigārē frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audiverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsīre possent. Quō ubi perven-tum est, multa mīlia passuum secundum litus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāset, postrēmō pervēnit ad īsu-  
10 lam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hīc Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, qui cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittisque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōscendere  
15 coēgit. Tum īsulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāasset, captivī ē nāvī sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōspectū  
erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās  
20 nautis libenter vēndidērunt.

1. hōc . . . tempore: for syntax, cf. illis temporibus, p. 1, l. 9.

2. nāvigārī posset: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive nāvigātum erat, p. 1, l. 11.

3. Dīmidia: *Half* (dīmidius, -a, -um).

7. quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. cum explōrāset: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. nāvigāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

14. quō: *this* (noun).

15. adversō flūmine: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. nandō: gerund, *by swimming*; the phrase nandō . . . perva-nērunt may be rendered freely “swam.”

## LESSON 12

*Henry Hudson (Continued)*

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvīgātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvī in rīpam ēgressus incolās convēnit, qui libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amicōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō 5 iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fieri, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenīre nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvī nāvēs aliās et hominēs mīsērunt, qui cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux 10 idem, cum ā Britanniā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentriōnibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōnsūmptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

15 Hudsōnem nēmō posteā vidit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissīs, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt:— quamquam prīmō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptīs, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. *haud diū*: freely, but *a short time*.

6. *angustius*: predicate adj., agreeing with *flūmen*, l. 5. — *hāc*: sc. viā; cf. the note on *quā*, p. 5, l. 13.

9. *negōtiārentur*: cf. the note on *possent*, p. 1, l. 13.

10. *cum . . . profectus esset*: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. *mare*: *bay*. — *maximum*: *mighty*; absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — *sub septentriōnibus*: i.e. toward the north (*septentriōnēs*, -um, M., the "Great Bear").

14. *altum*: *the deep (sea)*.

15. *āmissīs*: i.e. by death.

17. *paucīs . . . exceptīs*: freely, with the exception of a few.

18. *quod ēssent*: (anything) to eat (*ēssent* from *edō*). As antecedent for the relative, supply *id* (acc.).

## LESSON 13

*Colonization in New England*

Paucis post annis Britanni complurēs, quī apud Batāvōs diū habitāverant, in Americam cum liberis atque uxōribus ēmigrāre cōstituērunt. Qui, cum pervenissent ad litus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur, impetum 5 Indōrum veritī, lēgātum, nōmine Standisium, cum miliibus paucis misērunt, quī loca undique explorāret. Illi igitur multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressi sunt, cum nāvigārent interdiū, noctēsque autem in litore agerent.

10 Primō terrae incolās rārō vidērunt; olim tamen, cum māne proficisci parārent ūnusque ex militibus omnium arma in scaphā iam collocāvisset, Indī subitō ē silvā magnō clāmōre ērūpērunt, sagittisque vulnerāvērunt paucōs. Sed miliēs statim ad scapham cucurrērunt, ut arma caperent, 15 hostēsque celeriter fugere coacti sunt.

Postrēmō ad portum tūtum perventum est, ubi tribus ante annis multi habitāverant Indī; quī iam ad ūnum morbō perierant. Quā dē rē certiōrēs facti, colōnī reliqui quoque ad eum locum vēnērunt, ibique ē nāvi in litus ēgressi, dīs 20 ēgērunt grātiās castraque posuērunt. Est in litore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americānī semper coluērunt colentque

2. liberis atque uxōribus: sc. suis.

3. quī, cum: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. explorāret: note the mood.

8. cum nāvigārent: translate by a participial phrase.

10. rārō: adv., seldom.

11. omnium: used as a masc. noun, modifier of arma.

14. ut arma caperent: i.e. to arm themselves.

17. ad ūnum: utterly; cf. p. 4.

1. 5.

18. quā dē rē: i.e. dē hāc rē.

19. dīs: from deus.

21. coluērunt: colō, 3, colui, cultus, venerate.



IŪNO, RĒGĪNA DĒŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod h̄ic dēmum ē nāvi ēgressī sunt Britanni illi,  
qui posteā maiōrēs peregrinantēs appellāti sunt.

## LESSON 14

*A Soldier's Courtship*

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōni complūrēs periērunt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille, uxore mortuā, in mātrimōnium volēbat dūcere quandam puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē sentīret militem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit, iuvenemque quendam misit, qui puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, qui forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre cooperat, amīcō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est, lēniterque per litus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit. Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim sē nōn nōlle dixit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestis loquerētur, illa diū tacitā audivit, tum rīdēns: “Nōnne prō tē,” inquit, “dictūrus es?” Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum ad lēgātūm rediit. Qui primō amicum verbis acerbis

1. *quod*: conjunction.

2. *maiōrēs*: as noun, *Fathers*.

— *peregrinantēs*: *Pilgrim* (*peregrinor*, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. *quōrum* in *numerō*: *i.e.* among whom. — *Standisī*: filius and proper names in -ius and -ium have regularly this short form of the gen.; so also some common nouns in -ium. Accent, *Standisī*.

6. *cum*: causal conjunction; cf., however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. *maestus*: cf. the rendering of *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

11. *domum*: *residence*; with *domum* in this meaning, the preposition cannot be omitted (as in l. 16).

12. *quō*: cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14. — *rēs*: (*his*) errand.

13. *nōn*: with *nōlle*. — *cum Prissillā*: we would say “*to Prissilla*.”

14. *eius*: *i.e.* of *Standish*. — *rēbus gestis*: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. *nōnne*: *i.e.* *nōn + ne*. — *dictūrus es*: *going to speak*; cf. *reditūrus esset*, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illius culpā rem ita cēcidisse. Itaque paucis post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātrimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

## LESSON 15

*Unrest among the Indians*

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimici erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprā dixī; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam periculum ullum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; oīlī enim, cum ad oppidum 10 Indōrum inimicōrum profectus esset hostēsque vīsisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī alii, ā Britanniā profecti, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indi 15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōstituērunt; sed rēx, quīdam, qui colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōnsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Periculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum militib⁹ paucis ad alterum oppidum 20 profectus est. Ibi Indi, cum vīdissent militēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrēre posse, eī ostendērunt

1. illius culpā: *through (any) fault of his, i.e. of the iuvenis (culpa, -ae, f.).* — rem: *the affair.*

8. neque umquam: *and . . . never;* cf. the rendering of nec quisquam, p 2, l. 11. In translation, nec (neque) should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.

15. conciliō: contrast cōnsiliō, 1. 18.

18. periculō cōgnitō: *freely, having learned of the danger.* A literal rendering of cōgnitus in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.

21. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veriti, p. 2, l. 17.

sicās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucis post diēbus, cum quidam Pecsuet cum lēgātō loqueretur, is, sīgnō mīlitibus datō, Pecsuetis sīcam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfēcit; simul militēs, comitēs Pecsuetis adortī, eōs omnēs occidērunt. Quō factō, Indī reliquī perterriti fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgitābant ullī.

## LESSON 16 .

*Old Friends become Enemies*

Eī rēgī, ā quō colōnī dē suō perīculō cōnsiliīsque Indōrum certiōrēs factī sunt, duo erant filii, quī quoque colōnīs diū amici erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmisse colōnōs, quibus silvās Indi vēndiderant; tum novām religiōnem cīvēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vīdērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgitābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā mīlitēs missī sunt, quī frātrem maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbō affectus est gravī; cumque posteā domum redīset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrāti, Indī sicās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

1. verbōrum . . . contumēliās :

i.e. *insulting words*; lit. what?

—adiūnxērunt : adiungō, 3, -iūnxi,

-iūnctus, add.

2. quidam : *a certain*.

3. is : i.e. Standish.

4. eā : note the case.—ipsum : him. The intensive pronoun points a contrast between Pecsuet and his companions (comitēs).

5. quōd : cf. p. 12, l. 14.

6. nec diūtius : *and no longer*; cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—caede : a massacre.

10. patre . . . mortuō : translate by a clause introduced by "when" or "after."

11. bene ēmisse : i.e. had made a good bargain ; lit. what?

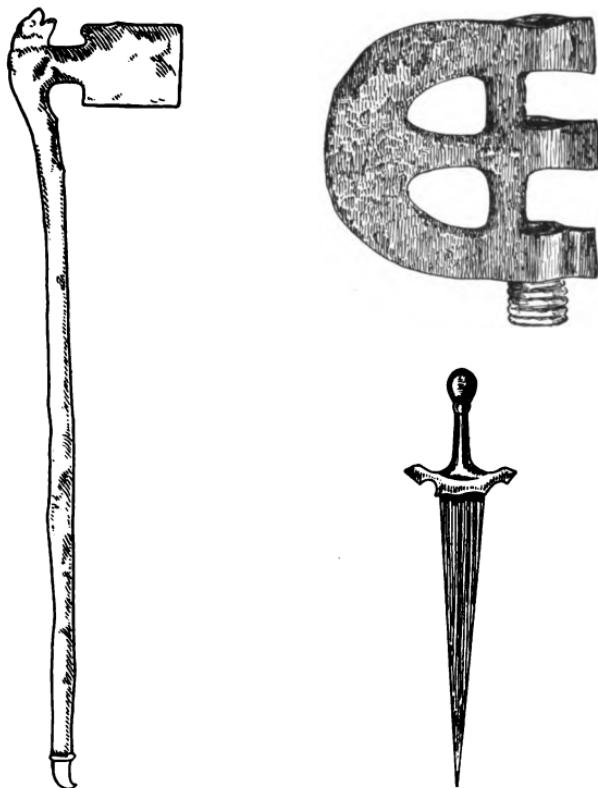
12. tum : furthermore. —cīvēs suōs : subject of the infin.

13. cōgitābant : note the tense.

14. quod : cf. quōd, l. 5.

17. gravī : modifying morbō. —suōs : as noun, *his own people*.

19. acuere : acuō, 3, acuī, acūtus, *sharpen*. This proceeding, of course, portended war.



SECŪRĒS ET SICA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēmum oppidāni alterum frātrem, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dīmīsērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua 5 quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

## LESSON 17

*The Outbreak of King Philip's War*

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuis iam ipse rēx erat, irātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Qui eum libenter secūti sunt; quin etiam oīlī quendam cīvem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnis prōdiderat.

10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī primō tantum villis admōvērunt ignis bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdōtibus moniti, hominem occidere nūllum ausi sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēmum, omnibus oppidis oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima 15 est facta, ac colōnī miserī, alī cum aquam peterent, alī cum ā villis in oppida fugerent, undique occīsī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcis-  
sent sagittāsque ārdentēs mīsissent in tēctum, postrēmō  
ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē  
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. hominem: *the man.*

5. trāditūrum: sc. esse.—

domī: *at home;* for the case, cf.  
humī, p. 7, l. 4.

8. suum: *of theirs.*

12. hominem: standing in con-  
trast to villis and bovēs of the  
preceding clause.

13. ipsōrum: *their own.*

15. alii . . . alii: *some . . .  
others.* — cum: *as.*

17. hostēs, cum: *when the  
enemy.* Note the changed order  
of the English. — in: *upon.*

19. ipsī: modifying castellō.—  
quā rē: *this.*

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extinti. Quārē Indi cōnātū dēsistere coāctī sunt.

## LESSON 18

*A Remarkable Deliverance*

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quidam,  
5 qui ē Britanniā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum  
eum volēbat interficere. Homō scilicet nōlēbat oppidānōs  
cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed olim, cum colōni in templō  
adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebris exire posse crēdēbat; ita-  
que ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Prīmō nēminem vīdit; tum subitō  
10 animadvertisit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut  
oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim  
ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Qui cum celeriter ē  
templō cucurrisserent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter  
15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coācti  
sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad  
latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec posteā ā colōnīs invenīri po-  
tuit. Qui igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum  
20 esse, qui sē adiuvāret, sicut multis ante annīs Castor et  
Pollūx olim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. dēpōnēbant: note the tense.

—imber (-bris, m.): shower.

3. cōnātū dēsistere: give up  
(lit. desist from) the attempt.

6. homō: cf. hominem, p. 20,  
1. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl.  
as singular (cf. quā rē, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrisserent: cf.  
the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce: abl. absol.,  
lit. the stranger (being) leader;  
transl. freely.

18. invenīri: note the last letter  
of the word.—potuit: for the trans-  
lation, cf. the note on possent,  
p. 1, l. 13.

19. qui: cf. the rendering of  
qui in the note on p. 5, l. 3.—  
ducem: a leader.

tulērunt, cum illi hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus,  
neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

## LESSON 19

*Philip finds Allies*

Dum haec geruntur, Indi quīdam longinqui, quib⁹ erat castellum maximum, armis aliisque rēbus Philippum iuvāre coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōni, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem prīmā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōnsiliaque hostium ipsi praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profecti, per silvās ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum, ac colōni multi interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōnsūmptaē: quibus rēbus factis, colōni vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōtī, Indi iam undique convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōspectum; tum, colōnis occisiōnēs vīllisque incēnsōs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim militēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nūllō modō cōsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōni miserī undique

3. dum, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. quō: neuter.—cōgnitō: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. prīmā: *the early*, lit. *the first (part of)*.

8. ipsi: may be omitted in translation.

9. viā: for syntax, cf. quā, p. 5,

11. 13.—nivālī: *nivālis*, -is, -e, *snowy*.

10. ācerrimē est pugnātum: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. what?

13. vulnerātōs: as noun, *the wounded*.—ferentēs: nom. case.

17. singula: modifying *oppida*.—veniēbant: for the translation, cf. the note on *rapiēbant*, p. 7, l. 17.

19. cum: *while*.

20. cōsequī: sc. eōs (*i.e.* Indōs).

interfecti sunt; Standisius enim iam pridem mortuus erat: sed postremo dux alius inventus est, qui feliciter cum Indis bellum gerere sciēbat.

## LESSON 20

*Captain Church*

Cercās, quī iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum hostibus feliciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indōs interdum sociōs sibi asciscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō oīlim profectus, ad quandam gentem pervenit haud longinquam, cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amīcus; quārē spērābat eius cīvibus facile sē persuādēre posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent.  
Ibi tamen ab Indis impetus acerrimus in Cercam eiusque comitēs facta est; qui igitur in palūde coācti sunt latēre, dōnec in scaphā vēnērunt mīlītēs complūrēs, qui eōs ex periculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tum perficere nōn potuerat, convenire tamēn rēgīnam iterum cōnārī cōnstituit. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ūnō cum milite Indisque tribus profectus, in eiusdem gentis finēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictis, ad rēgīnam ipse prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indī multī, quī per

3. gerere: cf. the use of the infin. with nesciēbat, p. 8, l. 2. cīvibus). — posse: replacing the fut. infin., which is lacking in this verb.

4. Cercās: gen. Cercae, etc. — modo: the adv., only.

5. etiam: also.

6. sociōs: (as) allies. — cōsiliō: design.

8. rēgīnae: dat. case. — ipse: he. — eius: i.e. the queen's.

9. persuādēre: persuade, lit. make (*it*) agreeable (hence the dat.

14. Cercās, quamquam: cf. the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

15. convenire: dependent on cōnārī.

17. dēnuō: i.e. iterum. — quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. cum: preposition. — per: around in.

herbam latuerant, subitō armāti exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illi cum Philippō gerēbant.

## LESSON 21

*The Death of Philip*

5 Cercās cum his sociis suisque militibus iam omnēs in partis iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucis cum comitibus per vallis multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōstituerat: quīn etiam oīlī, cum quīdam ex eius amīcīs dicere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx irātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius reī acerbitāte commōtus, frāter mortui statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.

15 Itaque dux colōnōrum, qui multōs diēs frūstrā quaesiverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōnsolārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, militēsque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnāti sunt; 20 rēx vērō infēlix, interceptus ā militibus qui in silvā collocatī

1. quī tamen, sum: *but when . . . they*; cf. quī, cum, p. 8, l. 13.

2. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — tum: may be omitted in translation.

5. suis: *his own*; cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. quīdam: *a certain one*.

12. hominem: cf. p. 20, l. 4. — suā: cf. suis, l. 5. — reī: for

the various meanings of rēs, see the Vocab.—acerbitāte: acerbitās, -ātis, F., *harshness*.

13. mortuī: *of the dead (man)*; part., used as a noun, masc. sing.

16. modo: (*but*) *just*.

18. quā rē: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. vērō: *i.e. tamen*. — infēlix (-īcis, adj.): *ill-starred*.

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indi interfectus est, quem ipse occiderat. Caput Philippi secūri abscisum colōni sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

## LESSON 22

*End of the War*

5 Quō dētrimentō perterritus lēgātus Philippi, qui paucis cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvīs procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesīvit; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgāti castra subitō perventum est.  
 10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēni ut vobiscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equīnam carnem māvis," inquit,  
 15 "an būbulam?" Quō auditō, Cercās scilicet dixit sē mālle būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōnsūmptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpitī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

- 2. *abscisum*: agreeing with caput.
- 3. *suprā*: preposition, *over*.
- 4. *rē vērā*: *in very fact* (*vērus, -a, -um*, lit. *true, or actual*).
- 5. *lēgātus*: *lieutenant*.
- 7. *quem*: *him*.
- 8. *senem*: *aged* (*from senex*).
- 10. *perpaucōs*: the prefix *per* is intensive.

- 12. *magnā*: *i.e. loud*.
- 13. *Cercās vērō*: sc. inquit.
- 14. *equīnam*: *equinus, -a, -um*, (*of*) *horse*.—*māvis*: what form of *mālō*?
- 15. *an*: conjunction, *or*.—*būbulam*: *būbulus, -a, -um*, (*of*) *cow*.
- 19. *Indus*: *the Indian*.—*silentiō*: *abl.*, used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdēbat eum exīsse ut arma alia sūmeret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns insignia quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt," inquit, insigniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita 5 bellum cōfectum est.

## LESSON 23

*William Penn and the Friends*

Dum haec in Britanniā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multi; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amicōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum 10 magnam pecūniā dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōnstituit, virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lēgāti Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amicōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta 15 nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniām prae-mīsit, paucisque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amicī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vivere volunt; itaque

- 1. alter: *the other* (*i.e.* Church).
- 2. aderat: *was back (again)*.
- manibus: for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10. — insignia: *trappings (insigne, -is, N.)*.
- 3. gesserat: *had worn*. — tua: *tuus, -a, -um, yours*.
- 4. dum haec, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.
- 7. veniēbant: note the tense.
- in: *among*.
- 10. magnam: (*a*) *large (sum*
- of)*. — dēbēbat: *dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itus, owe*. — quod: *this (adj.)*. — ut: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.
- 11. cōnstituit: *established*.
- 12. lēgātum: *governor*. — ē: freely, *after*.
- 14. grāta: *freely, popular (with)*; lit. what?
- 17. ubi: *there*.
- 18. nefās esse: *that it is a crime (nefās, indeclinable noun)*.

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitāte lēgāti multa nārrantur; quīn etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlim per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam 5 puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsius equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

## LESSON 24

### *Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia*

Dum in Britanniā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Virginiā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, multosque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidis habitābant, cum cruciātū occidērunt. Quō periculō commōti, colōni multa milia passuum nūntiōs ad caput prōvinciae misērunt, quī lēgātum ūrārent, ut mitteret militēs, quī hostis coercērent. Lēgātō autem nūllō modō persuādēri potuit ut colōnōs ad iuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum 15 dīmittere volēbat; quīn etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō, qui ā Britanniā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat, cum dixisset sē velle in Indōrum finis dūcere colōnōs paucōs, qui iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domi est iussus manēre.

20 Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. *per*: freely, *for*. — *continuōs*: continuus, -a, -um, consecutive. — *cum*: after.

3. *multa*: cf. p. 5, l. 9.—*trāditum est*: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. *euntem*: from *eō*. — *eam*: her. — *ipsius*: his own.

6. *positam*: part. (from *pōnō*), agreeing with *eam*.

11. *caput*: capital.

13. *persuādēri potuit*: lit. could it be made agreeable; cf. *persuādēre*, p. 23, l. 9.

15. *volēbat*: cf. *velle*, p. 2, l. 15.

17. *cum*: translate much earlier in the English sentence.

18. *ipsī*: on their own motion, i.e. without waiting for the governor to act.

fectus, cum primum in eorum conspectum venit summō assēnsū omnium dux factus est. Qui igitur, quamquam sciēbat lēgātum posteā irātum sē fortasse interfectūrum, in finīs tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam 5 undique dedit. Quod ubi est auditum, lēgātus ex oppidō celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indis gereret.

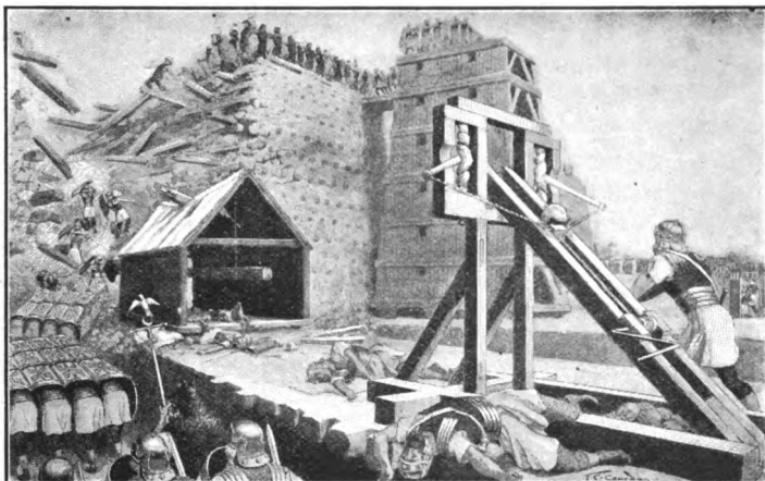
## LESSON 25

*Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)*

Brevī autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redire est coāctus; nūntiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domi re- 10 liquerat quīque iuvenī ducī amicissimi erant, rēs novās ibi agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquo domum rediit, colōnī, lēgātum adhūc esse irātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis cāri aedēs custōdiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō 15 factus esset, multī comitēs armāti ad oppidum secūtī sunt. Ibi tamen lēgātus, qui quoque cōpiās coēgerat, Bēcōnem statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānis irātis dīmittere coāctus est. Sed iuvenis, paucis post diēbus certior factus

1. *cum primum*: *i.e. as soon as.*
2. *omnium*: *as (masc.) noun, modifying assēnsū. — qui:* cf. p. 5, l. 3.
3. *Irātum*: *in (his) anger.* — *fortasse:* *adv., perhaps.* — *interfēctūrum:* *sc. esse.*
4. *cōpiās*: *(his) troops.*
5. *quod*: *this (noun).*
6. *supplicium*: *supplicium, -i, n., punishment.*
7. *dē*: *lit. from.* *supplicium sū-*  
*mere is the converse of poenās dare.*

10. *iuvenī*: *here as adjective.* — *rēs novās*: *revolution;* lit. what?
11. *agitāre*: *agitō, I, plan.* — *quibuscum*: cf. *sēcum*, p. 8, l. 14.
13. *arbitrātī*: cf. the use of *veritī*, p. 2, l. 17. — *Noctēs diēsque*: *night and day.*
14. *decuriō (-ōnis, m.)*: *member of the legislature.*
16. *coēgerat*: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lēgātūm parārē sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimicīs suīs invenīrī potuit.

Colōnī scilicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum 5 Indis modo cum lēgātō, fēliciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbē, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimicōrum ē praediis proximis dēductas ante militēs suōs posuisse dīcitur, ut sine periculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

## LESSON 26

*Nathaniel Bacon (Concluded)*

10 Lēgātūs, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obseßus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvis cōncendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, qui sentiēbat lēgātūm mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, urbem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus periculisque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lēgātūm solēre inimicōs etiam mortuōs contumeliis afficere, corpus ducis cāri tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lēgātūs, 20 cum redisset ad urbē amicōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsius iuvenis corpus invenīrē nōn potuit.

2. invenīrī: note the last letter of the word.

4. modo . . . modo: at one time . . . at another.

6. quod: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. dīcitur: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. suōrum: to (lit. of) his men.

10. lēgātūs, cum: cf. hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

17. cum intellegerent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.—solēre: cf. solēbant, p. 7, l. 4.

18. mortuōs: (*when*) dead.

19. mersērunt: mergō, 3, mersi, mersus, bury, lit. sink.

20. multōs: many (of).

Paucis post annis ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā ignōminiā affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque prōvinciae paulatim validiōrēs fiēbant. Sed antequam dē 5 bellō loquor, quod posteā ā colōnīs cum Britannīs gestum est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, qui imperātor summus Americanōrum futūrus erat.

## LESSON 27

*The Boyhood of George Washington*

Hic puer, qui Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginīā nātus est sexāgintā ferē annīs post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius 10 prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dixi. Puerō erat frāter maior, qui tribūnus militū factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānis tum gerēbant eīs in īnsulis, ad quās Columbus primum nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitū profectus est, dē 15 bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant puerī ac simulābant sē esse militēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Posteā vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ullum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fieri, māter 20 autem nōluit; itaque ille domī aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucis post an-

4. fiēbant: note the tense.

6. quaedam: (neut. pl.) *something*.

7. futūrus erat: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l.

15.

8. nātus est: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. post: here preposition.

16. imperātor: pred. nom.

17. vērō: *moreover*.—et: omit in translation.—factus: render by a clause introduced by “when.”—dīcitur: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. omnia: *everything*. —lūdō: lūdus, -ī, M., *school*. —trādēbantur: i.e. *was taught*; lit. what?

nīs vir quidam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum, hominem condūcere voluit, qui terminōs praediī suī cōstitueret; ac Vasingtō, qui hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedium missus est.

## LESSON 28

*Experiences on the Frontier*

5 In praediō, quod instar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agri-colae paucī, at multi Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multōs per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humī iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amābat. Olim cum ita sōpitus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex periculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, qui tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēvigintī annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus militum factus est: nam Virginīā tōtā reliquisque prōvinciis colōni arbitrābantur bellum cum Gallis mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multī iam trānsierant montēs cōsēderantque in valli-bus, quae a Gallis prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. terminōs: terminus, -ī, M., boundary.

3. hanc . . . artem: i.e. of surveying.

6. hīc: the adverb.

8. autem: moreover.

9. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — amābat: fancy; for other meanings of this word, see the Vocab.

10. foenum: foenum, -ī, N., straw.

11. ex quō: (*out*) of which. — quō ex periculō: for word order, cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. ūndēvigintī annōs nātus: at nineteen years of age, lit. having been born nineteen years.

15. tribūnus militum: a major.

16. Virginīā tōtā: throughout all Virginia. The prep. in is often omitted when the abl. is modified by tōtus.

Gallī commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dimittere nōllent, ca-stella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

## LESSON 29

*A Dangerous Mission*

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus Virginiae cōnstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō 5 rēs sine bellō compōni possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine morā dēlēctus qui hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucis cum comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs quoque trānsisset, Indis quibusdam ad concilium vocātis persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmititer accēpērunt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs ex illis fīnibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, qui Gallōrum cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, domum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per-15 ventum esset, impedimentis relictis, ūnō cum comite et duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scilicet erat ipsa pericolōsa (nam hiems iam erat): alterum autem fuit periculum maius; colōnīs enim inimīcus erat dux. Qui oīlīm, cum advesperāseret, tēlum subitō

1. *cum . . . nōllent*: translate by a participial phrase.

2. *pōnēbant*: note the tense.—*arcērent*: note the mood.

4. *sī*: (*if*) *perchance*.

5. *compōni*: *compōnō*, 3, -*po-sui*, -*positus*, *settle*.

6. *tractāret*: note the mood.

8. *Indis*: cf. the note on *per-suādere*, p. 23, l. 9.—*vocātis*: modifier of *Indis*.

11. *nisi*: introducing the part. coāctōs.

13. *cōpiās*: *stores*, or *supplies*.—*sollicitūdine*: *sollicitūdō*, -inis, F., *anxiety*.

14. *vērō*: *and*.

16. *duce*: *guide*.

18. *alterum*: *another*; contrast the commoner meaning of *alter* on p. 34, l. 1.—*colōnīs*: construe with *inimicus*.

in Vasingtōnem misit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn sōlum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum s̄ arbitrābātur, quod periculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

## LESSON 30

*A Dangerous Mission (Continued)*

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsirent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frigidam cecidit, ūnāque cum comite in insulā parvā morāri coāctus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem, 10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum periculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vēnērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervēnērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertināciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēns illōs tam audācter respondisse, 15 Vasingtōnem iussit mīlitēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eisdem in locis pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōni aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs profecti, in illis regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castrīs maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Qui vērō brevi 20 ā Gallis sē dēdere coācti sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. in: *at*.14. illōs . . . respondisse: *that they had replied*.7. rate: *ratis, -ia, F., raft*;15. ad castella . . . pōnenda: *to establish forts*.

for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

10. in: *upon the surface of*. —16. quibus: *the antecedent is locis*.

natābat: cf. natantēs, p. 3, l. 15.

11. ab: *from*.21. sibi: *dat. case, this being the regular agency construction with the gerundive. The whole*facilius: *i.e. more comfortably*.

12. ubi: cf. ubi, p. 4, l. 14.

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, cīvibus tamen suis satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

## LESSON 31

*The Beginning of the French and Indian War*

At paucīs post diēbus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostiū finēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque ibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explorātōrēs cēpit paucōs; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimōs, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Galli, cum sociīs Indis celeriter cōsecūti, in castra impetum fēcērunt ācerrimū; sed postrēmō, colōnīs multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātīs, ē castrīs Vasingtōnem cum armīs eā condicōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitū ex hīs finib⁹ statim redūceret. Ille igitur invītus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britanniā legiōnēs complūrēs missae sunt ad Gallōs expellendōs ex eis locīs, unde illī modo Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, qui tamen cum Indis bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scire, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquī colōnis sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa milia passuum per viās periculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explorātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely  
*that he must exert himself to the utmost for the defense, etc.*

1. suis: modifier of cīvibus.
2. Indis: here as adj.
10. eā condicōne . . . ut: on these terms, that.
12. invītus: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

14. ad Gallōs expellendōs: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. gerere: cf. the infinitive with nesciēbat, p. 8, l. 2.—sē: omit in translation.—omnia: all (about the subject).

21. legiōnibus: for syntax, cf. sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnis ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō pollicitī sunt: nam nē cōspectum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

## LESSON 32

*Braddock's Defeat*

Postrēmō vērō, cum in finēs hostium longē iter factum esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est audītus; tum tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac militēs Britannicī, quī hostem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōni interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque interpositis cum Indīs āriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs in viā habēbat instrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est, quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illi paene omnēs aut interfecti sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Vasingtō militēs perterritōs prīmō cohortārī cōnātus, imperātōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi impedimenta maxima relicta erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō, tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē fīnibus hostium sibi discedendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dīcam dē incommodō maximō, quod ā Rōmānis acceptum est apud lacum Trasumenum,

7. vidēbant: we would say  
“could see.”

8. arboribus . . . interpositis: freely, *getting behind trees*; lit. what?

10. habēbat: *kept*. — suōs: cf. suōrum, page 30, l. 9. — locō: from their places; cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

12. aut . . . aut: either . . . or.

14. imperātōre vulnerātō: translate by a phrase introduced by “after.”

17. discēdendum esse: impersonal use of the gerundive.

19. ut: to.

20. apud: at. — lacum Trasumenum: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi īnsidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum lītus est via angusta, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, militēs autem multōs in latebrīs prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē  
5 viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebris ērūpērunt et hostis perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

## LESSON 33

*Later Events of the War*

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dixi, Gallī victōriam erant adeptī Britannīque ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēperant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem 10 igitur colōni, cōpiis tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctis, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostis arcendōs mīsērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallis eōrumque sociis mēnsēs multōs fēlīciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam 15 imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britanniā ad Americam missi essent, ūnā cum lēgātis aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Pennsylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eīs locīs discēdere coēgit, ubi illi quondam Britannīs tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

20 Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissi bellum alibi āriter gessērunt; nam Indī, qui erant paene omnēs amicī, eōs omnibus modis adiuvābant. Sed

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. viā angustā: for syntax, cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. erant adepti: adipiscor, 3, *adeptus sum, gain, or secure.*

10. quem: not relative in the English translation.

18. Britanniā: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. animō dēmissi: lit. *cast down in mind, i.e. discouraged.* The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multis dētrimentis frāctī, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adepti sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannis trāditīs.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā-  
5 trimōnum dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellā-  
bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

### LESSON 34

#### *The Outbreak of the Revolution*

Nunc mihi dicendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucīs post annīs cum Britannīs ipsis gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciīs vectigālia quaedam exigere erant cōnāti, etsī hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūlli licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciīs in ūnum locum virī dēlēctī, in eis Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum convocātī sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum mīsērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnīs iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domī cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litterīs acceptīs, rēx irātus nōn sōlum iūra concēdere

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petiūrunt.  
—quam: *this* (noun).

2. adepti sunt: cf. the note on  
p. 37, l. 8.—Britannīs: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectigālia: vectigālia, -ium,  
N., taxes.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., meas-  
ure, or law.

11. suffrāgium ferre: cast a  
vote (suffrāgium, -ī, N.).—id: *this*  
(state of affairs).

13. ferenda: bearable; lit. what?  
—in ūnum locum: with convocātī  
sunt, l. 15.

14. in eis: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7.  
—cōnsilium . . . conciliō: con-  
trast the meaning of the two  
words.

15. litterās: for the force of  
the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: in which; strictly,  
abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: freely, en-  
joyed.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam misit mīlitēs multōs, quī ā colōnīs audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtonem, pīmū pugnātūm est, magnā cum caede Britannōrūm; nam agri-  
colae, muris interpositīs, tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs,  
qui ita sex milia passuum sē recipere coāctī sunt ad urbem,  
unde paulō ante profectī erant. Quibus rēbus factis, con-  
ciliū idem, quod ad rēgem litterās mīserat, quaerere coepit  
imperātōrem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-  
rō vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in  
bellō, quod paucis ante annis cum Gallis Indisque gestum  
erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus  
est.

## LESSON 35

### *Operations about Boston*

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenire  
potuit, iterum āriter pugnātūm est in quōdam colle, ubi  
posteā Americāni columnnam maximam eōrum nōmine  
statuērunt, qui ibi prō libertāte vītam suam largītī sunt.  
Eō in proeliō Britannī vīcērunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis  
laudāre poterant virtūtem colōnōrūm, qui impetum veterā-  
nōrūm tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. audāiae: *for* (lit. *of*) their  
insubordination.

3. apud: *near*.—pīmū: the  
adverb.

6. ita: *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. conciliū: (*deliberative*)  
*body*.

9. cīvēs: (*his*) fellow-citizens.

10. memoriā tenēbant: *i.e.* had  
not forgotten.

16. columnnam: columnna, -ae,  
F., monument. — nōmine: *in*  
*honor*.

17. statuērunt: *i.e.* posuērunt.  
— vitam: translate as though the  
noun were plural.

18. eō: modifier of proeliō.

21. Vasingtō, postquam: cf.  
the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20.  
1. 17.—illūc: adv., *thither*.

postrēmō, multis dētrimentis frācti, pācem petierunt; quā mox adepti sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannā trāditis.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā strimōnium dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellā bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit dūsus.

### LESSON 34

#### *The Outbreak of the Revolution*

Nunc mihi dicendum est dē bellō, quod colōni paucis post annis cum Britannis ipsis gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciis vectigālia quaedam exigēto erant cōnāti, et si haec lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūlli licēbat. Id colōni molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciis in unum locum viri dēlēcti, in eis Vasingtō, ad cōsilium commūne capiendum convocāti sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum misērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnis iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domī civēs reliqui obtinēbant. Quibus litteris acceptis, rēx trātus nōn sōlum iūra concēdere

1. petierunt: *i.e.* petivērunt.  
—quām: *this* (noun).

2. adepti sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. Britannis: dat. case.

6. dūsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectigālia: vectigālia, -ium, N., *taxes*.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, *v.*, meas- ure, or law.

11. suffrāgium ferre: cast a vote (*suffrāgium*, -i, N.). —id: *this* (*state of affairs*).

13. ferenda: *bearable*; lit. what? —in unum locum: with convocāti sunt, l. 15.

14. in eis: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7. —cōsilium . . . conciliō: con- trast the meaning of the words.

15. litterās: for the plural, see the V.

16. quibus: *by*. —abl. of means.

17. cōcēdere: give joyed.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam misit milites multos, qui à colōnis audaciee poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtonem, primum pugnatum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum; nam agri colae, mūris interpositis, tēla plūrima īmiserunt ī hostēs, qui ita sex millia passuum sē recipere coacti sunt ad urbem, unde paulo ante profecti erant. Quibus rēbus factis, concilium idem, quod ad rēgem litteras miserat, quācerere coepit Imperatōrem, qui omnis cōpias Americānas dūceret. Cetero vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestas Vasingtōnis ī bellō, quod paucis ante annis cum Gallis Indisque gestum erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevi factus est.

## LESSON 35

### *Operations about Boston*

Sed antequam Vasingtōn ī Britannium Novam perventre potuit, iterum aeriter pugnatum est ī quōdam colle, ubi postea Americānt columnam maximam cōrūm nōmine statuerunt, qui ibi prō libertāte vitam suam largiti sunt. Eō in proeliō Britanni vicerunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis laudare poterant virtūtem colōnorū, qui impetum veterānoū tan-

Vasiv-

ter excēperant

qua-

hostis mēnsēs multos

lumbam: columnā, -ae,  
ument. — nōmine : —

statuerunt: f. posuerunt  
(am: translate as though the  
were plural)

18. eo: modifier of proeliū  
21. Vasingtōn, postquam: cf.  
the note on hostis, rēs, p.  
L. 17.— illuc: uix, thūtōr.



COLUMNNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnītiōnēs Bostōnis continuuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit; quin etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnītiōnēs novās animadvertisit, vehementer commōtus ille: “Hī colōniūnā nocte,” inquit, “tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēnse tōtō perficere nōn potest.” Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotidiē tēla plūrima ballistis Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōncendere atque ē portū fugere coācti sunt.

Colōniū adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britanicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audire vellet, dē Britanniā dēsciscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōnstituērunt.

## LESSON 36

*The Battles of Long Island and Trenton*

15 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marīque oppugnārē parābant. Haud procul est magna īnsula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānis āriter pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn sōlum ex īnsulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum 20 dīmittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factīs, colōniū omnēs animō

6. *tanta . . . quanta: such . . . as.*

7. *potest: could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb.—*hōc vāllō, etc.: the abl. absol.* may be translated by a “when” clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. *ballistis: abl. of means.*

12. *cum: causal.*—*neque . . . neque: neither . . . nor.*

13. *dē: from.*—*dēsciscere: dēsciscō, 3, -scivī, -scitum est, separate.*

14. *rem pūblicam: commonwealth.*

15. *terrā marīque: by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. *animō . . . dēmissi: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.*

vehementer erant dēmissi; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem civib⁹ suis adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam 5 Britannī, qui invīti cum Americānis ipsi pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, qui in exercitū stīpendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eborācō in hibernis iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-  
10 que quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periērunt. Hostēs, qui nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānis facillimē capti sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

## LESSON 37

*The Retreat from Trenton*

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredi ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, periculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britanni plūrimi, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsire Americānī poterant. Tum imperātor Britanicus, qui Cornivallis appellā-  
20 batur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, “Crās,” inquit, “ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur.”

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*

4. adferret: note the mood.

— quam facultātem: *freely, an opportunity for which.*

5. invīti: *with reluctance.* — ipsi: *in person.*

9. erat: *there was.*

12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday (fēstus, -a, -um).*

16. illōs: *i.e. those mentioned in l. 7.*

20. cum . . . crēderet: *translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.*

21. crās: *adv., to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castrīs ignīs facere, ut cotidiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstīnārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere 5 Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine strepitū ullō ex castrīs ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum “vulpem istum” invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam 10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quidam Britannī aliī castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentiret sē ēlūsum esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedimenta cōservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē reliquerat.

## LESSON 38

*Burgoyne's Campaign*

Posterō annō alias imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per 15 prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia prīmō fēliciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est ūnā cum cōpiis omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam 20 missi essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. *ut* : *as.* — *solēbant* : *sc.*  
facere. — *paucī* : here used as a  
(masc. pl.) noun.

3. *vāllum* : of course, of their  
own camp. — *fēstīnārent* : *fēstīnō*,  
*i., hurry along.* — *quod* : *i.e. id*  
*quod, a thing which.* — *cōnsiliō* :  
*design.*

10. *oppugnābat* : note the  
tense.

13. *ad pugnam* : *for a battle*  
(merely), *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. *cui* : *for whom.* — *omnia* :  
note the gender.

18. *eō* : *there, lit. thither;* cf.  
the note on *quōd*, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnērunt; Germānisque magnō cum dētrimentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctis, imperātōrem ipsum mox ācerrimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae 5 maiōrēs fiēbant.

Quō proeliō victi hostēs, qui iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadā redire p̄imō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditiōnem vēnērunt. Tum scilicet colōni omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, quod periculum 10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibi hostēs āriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

## LESSON 39

*Valley Forge*

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dixi, Britannī Philadelphiam oppugnārē parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput reī pūblicae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae 15 numerō erant multō inferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. in diēs: <i>from day to day.</i>  | 13. quae urbs: <i>the city which;</i><br>lit. what?  |
| 6. omnibus ex partibus: <i>on</i><br><i>all sides.</i>   | 15. numerō: for syntax, cf.<br>animō, p. 37, l. 20. — multō: <i>(by)</i><br><i>much.</i>   |
| 8. Americānīs: dat. case.  | 16. senātus: <i>Congress.</i>  |
| 9. quod: conjunction.  | 17. nūllō: supplying the miss-<br>ing abl. of nēmō. — dēfendēte:<br>sc. eam ( <i>i.e.</i> Philadelphiam).<br>For the pres. part., being active<br>in meaning, may take an object<br>even when used, as here, in the<br>abl. absol. construction. |
| 10. vidēbantur: sc. sibi, <i>i.e.</i><br><i>they seemed to themselves; freely,</i><br><i>they thought that they, etc.</i>                    |  |
| 11. gerēbant: note the tense.<br>— maximē dubius: by the prefix-<br>ing of maximē, an adj. (or adv.) is<br>raised to the superlative degree. |  |
| 12. haec: neut. pl.  |  |

Paucis post diēbus circiter quinque mīlibus passuum ab  
eādem urbe āriter pugnātum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō  
discessit inferior. Qui igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, mili-  
tēs suōs in hibernis collocāvit in quādam valle, ubi mēnsēs  
5 multōs summā cum inopiā omnium rērum necessāriārum  
miserrimē vīctum est. Nam nōn sōlum in aerāriō nūlla  
erat pecūnia, sed in castris mox frūmentum quoque dēficere  
coepit; militēsque miserī, quibus erant saga nūlla, saepe  
noctēs tōtās prope ignem vigilāre coācti sunt. Quin etiam  
10 trāditum est, cum agmen in hiberna iter faceret, multōrum  
pedēs nūdōs in nive vestigia cruenta fēcisse.

Sed iam dēmum ex Eurōpā socii Americānis auxilium  
ferre parābant; multi enim etiam aliis ex gentibus mo-  
lestē ferēbant Britannōs iūra civium colōnīs concēdere  
15 nōluisse.

## LESSON 40

*Help from France*

Ita hōc ferē tempore factum erat ut Gallī, qui Britannōs  
minimē amābant, cum Americānis facerent foedus atque  
trāns mare imperātōrem cum classe mitterent, qui colōnōs

1. **quīnque mīlibus passuum:**  
abl. of degree of difference.—**ab:**  
(away) from.

2. **pugnātum est:** *a battle was*  
*fought*; lit. what?

3. **cum:** *as, or since.*

5. **cum:** *freely, under the*  
*stress of.*

6. **miserrimē:** *miserē* (adv.),  
*wretchedly.* — **vīctum est:** *imper-*  
*sonal pass. (from vīvō).* — **aerāriō:**  
*aerārium, -ī, N., public treasury.*

8. **quibus:** dat. case; cf. *cui,*  
p. 11, l. 2.

10. **multōrum:** as (masc.) noun;  
cf. *multī*, l. 13.

12. **Americānis:** indirect obj.  
with *auxilium ferre.*

13. **aliis ex gentibus:** *i.e. of*  
*other nationalities.*

16. **factum erat:** *it had come*  
*to pass.*

17. **cum:** preposition.— **foedus:**  
*foedus, -eris, N., alliance.*

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Britannī illi, qui Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentirent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxerunt cum cōpiis aliis, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita 5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervenit.

Adhuc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vincī posse: sed iam dēnum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciis, quae ad meridiem spectant, colōnī rārī multīs cum servis in praediīs maximīs habitārent, in 10 eās cōnstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlicius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōnsilium fefellit; nam Gorgia ūnā cum aliis quibusdam prōvinciis brevī est occu-pāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victī sunt. Quibus dētrimentīs minimē animō dēmissi, colōnī 15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvis palūdibusque latēbant, dōnec occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae nanci-scerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

## LESSON 41

*Benedict Arnold*

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam 20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. quibus rēbus: *this.* — Philadelphia: locative case.

2. flūmine . . . obsessō: translate by a conditional clause.

3. oppugnārī: note the last letter of the word. — posse: *could.* — sēsē: *i.e.* sē.

8. cum: *since,* or *inasmuch as.*

10. eās: referring to prōvinciis, 1. 8. — sī: cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

11. nec vērō, etc.: *freely, and the plan was successful;* lit. what?

13. ubicumque: *conjunction, wherever.*

15. manūs: *companies, or bands.*

16. latēbant: cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — reī bene gerendae (gen. case): *freely, successful action.* — nanciscerentur: translate the subjunctive “*could.*”

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posuerant, quōque ab Americānīs comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessāria erant; nam castra nātūrā locī mūnitissima erant, ac fūnis quoque 5 ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūn-tium mīserunt, qui ducem convenīret Americānum, litt-  
rāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit  
10 nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs rediret, ab Americānīs  
tribus captus est: quī captīvum sine morā in castra pro-  
xima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modis ab  
eīs salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior fac-  
tus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quō-  
15 rum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitīs est damnātus;  
litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scriptās ferēbat,  
dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnīs tribus  
ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs civēs ācerrimē bel-  
20 lum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam  
eīs ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. *castra, quae, etc.*: namely, West Point.

2. *quōque*: *i.e.* *quō + que, and into which*; for *quō*, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. *omnia*: note the gender.  
— *ad*: *for*.

4. *nātūrā*: note the case.—  
fūnis (-is, M.): *chain*.

5. *ferreus* (-a, -um): *iron*.  
— *ductus erat*: *had been stretched*.

7. *prōditiōnis*: *prōditiō, -ōnis, F., betrayal*; cf. the verb *prōdō*,

1. I.

12. *ille miser*: *he, poor fellow*.

14. *quam celerrimē*: *as quickly as possible*. — *quōrum in exercitū: and in their army*.

16. *cōgnitā*: *tried*. — *capitis*: *i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. *manū*: abl. of means with *scriptās*.

19. *cum . . . gessisset*: *after waging*. — *suōs*: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on *suūm*, p. 11, l. 6).

21. *eīs ipsīs*: dat. case; construe with *invīsus*.

## LESSON 42

*A Roman who fought against his Country*

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dicam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvībus iniūriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūnxit cum hostib⁹, quī anteā bellum Rōmānīs saepe intulerant.

5 Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus primō rēs undique fēliciter ēvēnērunt, Rōmānīque lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Qui autem, propter iniūriam ā civib⁹ inlātam adhūc irātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dimisit; quīn etiam idem 10 nūntii ā senātū iterum missi nē in castra recepti quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Rōmānī graviter permōti etiam sacerdōtēs mittere cōstituērunt, si ab eis saltem Coriolānī animus ferōx flecti posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolānī ūnā 15 cum aliis mātrōnīs complūrib⁹ ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, mātris verbis vehementer comōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē finibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Posteā apud hostis mul-

1. *pauca*: *a few (words)*.
2. *qui*: *this (adj.)*.
3. *iniūriā*: abl. used adverbially.—*urbe*: *the city*, i.e. Rome, often thus designated as being *the city par excellence*.
4. *Rōmānis*: dat. case.
5. *dēnuō*: *i.e. iterum*.
6. *pācis petendae causā*: *i.e. ad pācem petendam*. Literally *causā* means “for the sake of.”
8. *asperius*: *rather harshly* (*asperē*: adv., *harshly*); for the

rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on **maximum**, p. 13, l. 11.

9. *lēgātōs*: *envoys or ambassadors*.—*maestissimōs*: pred. adj.—*idem*: pl.
13. *ferōx* (-ōcis, adj.): *fierce*.—*flecti*: *flectō*, 3, *flexi*, *flexus*, *influence*.—*vērō*: *and*.—*quicquam*: *any concession*, lit. *anything*.
15. *maestae*: *in (the garb of) mourning*.

tōs annōs vīxit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dicere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

## LESSON 43

*The Surrender of Cornwallis*

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eis diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannis gestum est. At paulātim oppida 5 prōvinciārum, quae ad meridiem spectant, rursus in potestātem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociisque Gallicis; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnitissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnatiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā ērumpere cōnāti essent parsque mūnitioñum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta, 15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suis oculis ignōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrū simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditiō est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victoriā nūntiātā, Americānī ecfrēnātē gaudēbant; 20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximās ēgit.

1. vīxit: from vīvō. — nec libenter: cf. the note on p. 17,

*steal (goods) and drive off (live stock).*

1. 8.

11. mūnitissimā: *strongly fortified.*

2. senī: *for an old man;* senī is from senex.

13. hostēs: *i.e.* the English.

3. ut . . . redeāmus: *to return.*

14. nē . . . vidēret: *freely, in order to avoid seeing.*

6. ibi: *in that region.*

15. suis: cf. again suum, p. 11,

8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, F., lawlessness. — rapere et agere: freely, *rob and plunder;* strictly,

1. 6.

20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MUNITIONES

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vallum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britanniā pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

## LESSON 44

*Washington retires to Private Life*

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, qui tum Eborācum Novum praeſidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnſcendere 5 domumque redire ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgāti, qui eō duce annōs circiter octō stipendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuērunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem 10 dextrā tenuērunt. Lēgātīs dīmissis, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitudinēs maximaē ex oppidīs omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina 15 etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in prae-diō iūre ōtiōsum vivere posse, sicut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictū est.

1. *Britanniā*: cf. the note on sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

freely, *Congress was . . . in session.*

6. *lēgātōs*: *staff officers.*

13. *cum* : *as.*

7. *eōs valēre iussisset* : *had bidden them (to) fare well (valeō, 2, valui).*

14. *sparsērunt* : *spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsus, scatter.* — *fausta* : *faustus, -a, -um, complimentary.*

8. *eō duce* : cf. *advenā duce*, p.

16. *exspectābat* : note the tense.

21, l. 14. — *circiter* : cf. p. 45, l. 1. — *stipendia fēcerant* : cf. p. 42, 2, *valui*.

17. *arbitrātus* : cf. the note on *veriti*, p. 2, l. 17.

1. 6.

18. *iūre* : abl. of *iūs*, used ad-

verbially ; cf. *iniuriā*, p. 48, l. 3.

— *ōtiōsum* : cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

11. *senātus . . . habēbātur* :

## LESSON 45

*The Father of his Country*

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animis hōminum, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater 5 patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, qui paucis contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cām vīcisset cīvīs pessimōs, qui rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antiquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā civibus grātīs iūre datum est.

10 Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniūriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vivēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Galli plūrimi trāns montēs in Italiam subitō profecti, proeliō ācrī vīcērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut 15 audācter finēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānisque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profecti, in quōsdam Gallōs, qui sine custōdiis in agrō apertō

1. laus (laudis, F.): credit. — tribuenda est: is due (tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtus, give, or ascribe). — quod: that (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitāte: aeternitās, -ātis, F., endless extent. — temporum: the ages. — aliud: (any) other.

4. aequē: adv., equally. — quod: as for the fact that.

5. hic est: this is; for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucis: (only) a

few; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3. -tigī, fall (to the lot of), or happen (to).

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, ruin.

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., title. — grātīs: grateful.

11. Ardeātēs: people of Ardea (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Galli: the Gauls, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 3.

humī iacēbant sōpītī, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum,  
eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque  
hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō  
paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. **ad Rōmam:** *near (or at) Rome.*    4. **ad ūnum:** cf. p. 4, l. 5.

## TALES OF LAND AND SEA

### LESSON 46

#### *The Settler's Daughter*

In Britanniā Novā quondam agricolae, qui semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotidiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quandam vīcum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, si quandō opus esset, colōni liberōs uxōrēsque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō oīlim signum subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc audītō, agricultorū, equīs in agrīs sine morā relictīs, ad villās cucurrērunt, et mulierēs ac liberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

10 At vir quīdam, cui erat filia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenire nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōspectum vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocāvit, nē hostēs eam invenīre possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suīs ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15 In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēducti sunt agricultorū pauci, in eīs ille vir, dē quō modo dīxi. Oppidānī scilicet crēdidērunt filiam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multis post mēnsibus

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high*.

4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.

— si quandō: if at any time, or whenever. — opus esset: there should be need.

7. sine morā: i.e. instantly.

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47,

l. 14.

11. priusquam: i.e. antequam.

15. est . . . commissum: i.e. commissum est.

16. in eīs: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vīcō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō filiam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

## LESSON 47

*The Trials of War*

5 Ab hostibus trānsmarīnīs qui ōlim bellum cum colōnīs Americānīs multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā diligētiā cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, qui hoc oppidum praeſidiō tenēbat, 10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānīs superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō posteā vidit, alterque paucis post hōris in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.

15 Praedam quoque ē vīllīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfrī callidē ēlūsērunt; postquam enim militēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum dominī celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus argētum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōnspectum vēnērunt. Itaque ille, qui suprā stābat, tabu-

3. ossa : os, ossis, N., bone.

construe with invīsus. — superbiā : abl. of cause.

5. trānsmarīnīs : trānsmarī-

11. quod . . . vellet : on the ground that he wanted.

nīs, -a, -um, from across the sea.

16. callidē : adv., cleverly.

6. atrōcia : atrōx, -ōcis, adj., dastardly.

18. tabulā:tabula,-ae,F.,board.

7. dīcuntur : note the pl. verb.

21. ille : the one.—tabulam :

10. quīque : i.e. qui + que. —

cf. l. 18.

omnibus oppidānīs : dat. case;

lam statim dēmisit, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, tris diēs noctēsque sub aedibus dīcitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

## LESSON 48

*The Attempt to surprise Detroit*

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indīsque gerēbātur, paene cōfectum est, multaque castella longinqua in potestātem Britannōrum vēnērunt, quīdam rēx Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliis undique convocātīs, Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caudem faciendam Indī omnia expedīrent, ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in tabernāculis arma parāre animadvertisit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit, cōsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castellum custōdiis maiōribus fīrmātūm est, nec nimis mātūrē; nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audīrī poterat cantus

1. dēmisit: not dimisit.—  
quid: *i.e.* aliquid. After nē and  
sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc.,  
are regularly used.

3. dīcitur: cf. dīcuntur, p. 55,  
l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,  
the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of  
capiō. This and the following  
infīn. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could.*  
10. sē: *him.*  
14. quā rē: *this observation.*  
15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,  
*felt no concern;* lit. what?  
18. nimis: adv., *too.* The  
whole phrase may be rendered  
*freely and none too soon.*  
19. audīrī: note the last letter  
of the word.—cantus: cf. p. 3,  
l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sīc enim Indī sē ad caudem incitāre solēbant.

## LESSON 49

*The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)*

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervallō sequēbātur reliqua multitudō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnitionēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portis castellī patefactīs, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, ūnā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestimentis tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus mīlitēs omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armis circumstāre animadvertisit. Postquam vērō ad principia dēductus est ac vīdit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loqui coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum pērventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō signō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēterī, quī extrā mūnitionēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorīrentur.

2. caudem: (*the business of*  
*murdering.*)

4. intervallō: translate the abl.  
"at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. pilā: (*at*) ball; abl. of means  
(pila, -ae, F.). — lūsūrōs: sc. esse.

8. qui omnēs: *all of whom.* —  
vestimentis: abl. of means; but  
translate "under."

10. cum armis: *i.e.* (*fully*)  
armed.

11. circumstāre: *i.e.* in such  
a way as to encircle Pontiac and  
his followers. — principia: principia,  
-ōrum, N., *headquarters.*

15. pauca: note the gender;  
cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. zōnam: zōna, -ae, F., belt.  
—datūrum: *would offer.* — quō  
signō: abl. of time when; trans-  
late "at."

17. cēterī: *i.e.* reliqui.

Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus sīgnū dedit, et subitō p̄rincipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmūm barbarī, qui iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt 5 ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōnspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

## LESSON 50

*A Successful Ruse*

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostis saepe fallāciīs ēlūsērunt. Sicut dux quīdam Americānus, qui mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā olim clam 10 domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, qui paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātū Brittanicū, qui castris praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad 15 oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōti sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scilicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātam: sed filia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. *zōnam*: see p. 57, l. 16. — *sīgnū dedit*: *i.e.* made a motion.
2. *p̄rincipia*: see p. 57, l. 11.
7. *fallāciīs*: tricks or trickery (*fallācia*, -ae, F.).
8. *sicut*: as, for instance.
9. *causā*: cf. the note on p. 48,
1. 6.
10. *oppidānī*: (*his*) townsmen.
11. *qui paucī*: cf. *qui omnēs*, p. 57, l. 8.
12. *praeerat*: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. *legiōne*: (*his*) regiment.
15. *Americānī*: as noun, gen. sing.

16. *ignēs*: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — *quō*: neuter.

19. *obsecrō*: I beg (*you*) (*obsecrō*, 1). — *eius . . . miserae*: of her, poor woman.

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; mīlitēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morāti, dōnec aedēs tōtae igni cōnsūmptae sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum viderat quisquam. Sic astūtiā filiae servātus mox ad exercitum tūtō rediit.

## LESSON 51

*How the Town was Saved*

Multis post annīs, quam ea, quae modo dixī, facta sunt, duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Olim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōspectum subitō vēnit 15 nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, mīlitēs multī scaphis vectī ad litus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānorūm coēpērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēteri; at puellae illae,

1. rē: *concession*.—ēlāta est: from efferō.

3. omnibus ex partibus: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē: *among themselves*.

8. manibus, etc.: abl. of means; translate "upon" (genū, -ūs, N., knee).—neque . . . quisquam: cf. p. 2, l. 11.

9. astūtiā: astūtia, -ae, F., *quick wit*.

11. post . . . quam: i.e. post-quam.—ea: *the events*.

13. facinus: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the Vocab.). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. parābant: *were making preparations for*. What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*tibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march ; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tibiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum lītus clam properāvērunt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt. Quō sonō audītō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī multaeque gentēs aliae tibiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur, hostēs, nāvigiīs oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūrīs inferendis cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellis duābus oppidum servātum est.

## LESSON 52

*An Example of Fortitude*

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū patī possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dīcuntur inter nivēs vitam agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsī ignēs admoveantur. Illī tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nūllō modō superant. Nam oīlim, cum diū neque fēliciter bellum cum rēge

1. tibiā: tibia, -ae, f., *flute*.—  
tympanō: tympanum, -ī, N., *drum*.

2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8.  
— clārē: adv., *loudly*.

5. tibiā tympanōque: see l. 1;  
for syntax, cf. manibus, p. 59, l. 8.

6. nē: (after a verb of fearing) *that*.

7. suam: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

8. īferendis: *inflicting*; cf.  
the force of the gerundive as seen  
in the use with **ad** and **causā** in  
purpose clauses.

9. solvērunt: lit. *loosed*, or  
*released*; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj.—vitam:  
translate as pl.

14. ēdere: not *edere*.—etsī:  
*even though*.—ignēs: translate as  
sing. — admoveantur: sc. *eis*;  
subjunctive, because part of the  
indirect discourse. Render the  
whole phrase freely.

15. ferendō: *in (the matter  
of) bearing*; cf. īferendis, l. 8.  
The ablative expresses specifica-  
tion.

16. neque fēliciter: *and unsuc-  
cessfully*; cf. the note on p. 17,  
l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōstituit sōlus trānsire rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsisset, in castra hostium incolumis 5 pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scribam occidit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Qui cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōnsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. 10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō visō rēx, tantam fortitūdinem admirātus, captivum incolumem dīmisit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petīvit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōlet.

## LESSON 53

*A Hasty Leave-Taking*

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britanni cum Americānis gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem

1. Porsinnā: king of Etruria, a district of Italy just north of Latium.—C.: *i.e.* Cālius (*Gaius*).

2. Tiberim: acc. sing. of Ti-beris. — sī: *if*.

3. veste: *i.e.* vestimentō: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. internōscere: internōscō, 3, -nōvi, -nōtus, *distinguish*.

6. scribam: scriba, -ae, m., *clerk*.

7. ad: *before*. — qui: the king. — cum vellet: translate by a participle phrase.

8. penitus: adv., *fully*. — in: *against*. — inita erant: ineō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter into*.

9. omnia: *everything*.

11. quō: *neut*.

13. quod: *because (as he said)*. — ex quā . . . iuvenēs: *freely, the young men of which*.

14. tantae virtūtis: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. prīmō bellō: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociīs Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitūm prōgressī, villīs undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitāte occidēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsi erant animī.

Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ūlīm subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominūmque certiōrem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris villam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor filium iussit equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictis, ad ripam flūminis satis magni, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsissent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt ūnā cum colōnīs aliīs, quī in his regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sīc quidem sine labōribus periculīsque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter liberīque sub caelō noctem agere coāctī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 54

*The Capture of a Man-of-War*

Olim multī armātī Americānī ad Canadām versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallis pugnārent. Qui postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Indīs: here adj.  | 11. pauca: note the gender.  |
| 3. occidēbant: cf. rapiēbant,  | — bōbus: from bōs.   |
| p. 7, l. 17.   | 12. satis: <i>quite</i> .  |
| 5. rēs: <i>matters</i> .   | 14. aliīs: not reliquis or cēterīs.                                |
| 8. villam: <i>farm</i> ; cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3. | 18. noctem agere: cf. vitam agere, p. 61, l. 13.                   |
| 9. commūnicāret: commūnicō, i, make . . . jointly.                     | 20. armātī: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely. |

gredi vellent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsire posset.

Americānī scilicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxerunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quidam, maximaे virtutis vir, imperātōri “Ego,” inquit, “sī mihi mīlēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōnficiam.” Militibus cuneīsque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sic inseruit, ut gubernācula nullam in partem movēri possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsire coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Galli, qui nihil suspicābantur, vēlis passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnāti sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad litus dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānis, qui ad id ipsum in litore morāti erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānorūm sine ullō incommodō ad litus ulterius pervēnerunt, militēsque rursus ad Canadām per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

## LESSON 55

### *The Fall of New London*

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent,  
20 colōnī classis onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum litus Novae Britanniae ad

1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.

2. nē quis: *so that no one*; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

4. sententiae: cf. sentiō.

8. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43,

1. 5.

9. inseruit: īserō, 3, -seruī, -surtus, *force in.* — ut: introduc-

ing a clause of result. — gubernācula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.

10. movēri: note the last letter of the word.

12. passīs: from pandō.

13. ventīs: abl. of means.

14. id ipsum: *this very purpose.*

16. ulterius: modifier of litus.

occidentem nāvigatorēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicīs celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervallō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eis praesidiō missae erant. Id Britanni diū mo-  
5 lestē tulerant; cumque īinsula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē posteā umquam colōni in nāvēs suās impetum facere audērent, Novum Londīnium dēlēre cōnstituērunt.

Itaque ab īsulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventis adversis impedītī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre,  
10 dōnec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellis sīgnū colōnis datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britanni ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad lītus versus fēcērunt iter, mūrīsque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmīsērunt.  
15 At Britanni, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrū-pērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templisque admōvērunt. Quō vīsō, colōni, ut uxōrēs liberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 56

*The Fall of New London (Continued)*

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī  
20 praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāvigatorēs: modifying clas-sis, p. 64, l. 20.—interdum: not interim.—vidēbant: *used to sight.*

2. capiēbant: cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.—sī quae: *if any;* cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

3. tardius . . . maiōre: ab-solute comparatives (cf. the note on p. 13, l. 11).—intervallō: cf. p. 57, l. 4.

4. eis praesidiō: *as an escort*

*for them, lit. for a protection to them, praesidiō being a dat. of service.—id: i.e. this preying upon their shipping.*

5. subācta: subigō, 3, -ēgi, -āctus, *subdue.*

6. nē . . . umquam: *so that never.*

8. fretum: *sound.*

15. numerō: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. ignēs: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britanni, qui, ut suprā dixi, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnitiōnēs, castraque expugnās vērunt; quīn etiam virtūte colōnōrum, qui animō obstinātō restiterant, adeō exacerbātī sunt, ut summā crūdēlitātē occiderent dēditōs quōsdam, qui arma iam prōiēcerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrāti,  
 10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā, ut hominēs miserī in carrum alias super alium abicerentur. Tum ā Britannis circiter viginti carrus dūcī coeptus est ad villam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amīcis cūrārī possent. At praecēps erat via, ac postrēmō ā militibus carrus diūtius  
 15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclive celeriter dēlātus, in arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātis interficti esse dicuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns portum auditus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxili ferendi  
 20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvis sē recipere coācti sunt.

2. respōnsō: noun, derived from respondeō.

3. ut: as.

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18.—exacerbātī sunt: exacerbō, I, exasperate.

7. dēditōs: as noun; cf. vulnerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., totally, or utterly.—arbitrāti: cf. veriti, p. 2, l. 17.

10. id: sc. fēcērunt.

12. coeptus est: the passive forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praecēps (-cipitias, adj.): steep.

15. per dēclive: along the slope; dēclive being used as a neut. noun (from dēclivis, -is, -e, steep).—dēlātus: i.e. rolling down; lit. what?

16. concussiōne: concussiō, -ōnis, F., shock.—ē: of.

19. auxili: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4.

## LESSON 57

*Captivity among the Indians*

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eis capti sunt. E quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

5 “Ōlim,” inquit, “cum barbari subitō in cōnspectum vē-nissent, ego cum oppidānis cēteris fugā petivī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reli-quīs captivis in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs 10 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumeliās acerbissimās cotidiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

“Noctū hostēs captivōs humī supinōs collocābant, cu-neisque in terrā dēfixīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum 15 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbari, veritī nē frūmentum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum paene necātus, paucis post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emp-tus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī.”

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant, p. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — com-memorat: *i.e.* narrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, “*in flight*”; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutē: lutum, -ī, N., mud.

11. contumeliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly*. — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover*. — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, I, con-sign. — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

## LESSON 58

*A Fresh Supply of Powder*

Olim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānīs suis ita salūti fuit. Subitō ab Indis oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbari diū expugnārē frūstrā cōnāti sunt. At dēficere iam 5 cooperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissi; quamquam enim in villā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relictā erat, nēmō eam putābat 10 ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferri posse, quod Indi in īnsidiīs undique latēbant. Multī tamen periculum subīre volēbant, sed Elizabēta: "Ego ibō," inquit; "puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis."

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad villam versus ambulāvit. Quā rē novā permōtī, Indi prīmō ēventum taciti exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediente ad villam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbari, qui iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant, 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita: *in the following way.*  
—salūti: lit. *for a safety*; cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. —erat oppugnātum: contrast *expugnārē*, l. 4.

5. quō: abl. of means.  
7. animō dēmissi: cf. p. 37,  
l. 20.  
10. modō: freely, *chance*. For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subīre: subeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *risk*, lit. *undergo*.  
12. volēbant: *were willing*.  
13. mē . . . carēre: *spare me*, lit. *be without me*; mē is abl. case.  
—potestis: *you could*; cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.  
16. rē: *performance*.  
17. nūllō impediente: cf. nūllō dēfendente, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnique pulvēre sublevatī impetū Indōrum potuērunt sustinēre, dōnec amīci auxili ferendi causā ex oppidis fīnitimis frequentēs convēnērunt.

## LESSON 59

*A Battle against Great Odds*

5 In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in litore positum est oppidum Taeconderōga, āriter quondam ab Americānis cum Britannis pugnātum est. Americānis parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, qui facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā diligentia īstrūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maxima virtūtis, etsi numerō erat multō inferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britanni, noctem veriti, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancorām haud procul cōsistēbant, nē colōni per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americāni nocte intempestā, lucernīs extinctīs, silentiō dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vitāvērunt. Itaque māne, cum Britanni proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōspectū erat nāvis ullā; quārē illi, ancorās sublātīs, summā celeritātē īsequī coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūti sunt, cōnstitit ea

2. sublevatī: sublevō, *i.*, *help out.*

6. Americānis: dat. case.

9. īstrūctās: *equipped.*

12. maxima virtūtis: cf. *tanta virtutis*, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō: for syntax, cf. cōnātū, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernīs: *lucerna, -ae, F., lantern.*

24. fugientēs: participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in portū mūnitūm pervenīre potuit; quīn etiam nē illam quidem praedam cēpērunt Britanni; nam suō nāvigiō, cum ad litus appulsum esset, Americāni ipsi ignis admōvērunt.

## LESSON 60

*A Night Attack*

Bellō prīmō, quod ā Britannīs cum Americānis gestum est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris īnsula parva praeſidiō Britannicō tenēbātur: interim dominus īnsulae, vir locuplēs reique pūblicae amantissimus, molestē scilicet ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō magis quod mīlitēs interdum sē insolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americāni cōnstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvīgārē cōpiāsque Britannicās, si possent, ex īnsulā expellere. Itaque clam profecti, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad īnsulam silentiō appulsis, impetum ācerriūm subitō fēcērunt. Quā rē novā permōti Britanni ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt; et dominus quoque īnsulae, quī nesciēbat amīcōs adesse, impetum ab hostib⁹ factum arbitrātus, ūnā cum uxōre liberisque in silvās tardius sē contulit; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset: cf. appulit, p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō prīmō: cf. p. 62, l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris: lit. *Farther* (from the point of view of the capital of the United States), i.e. *South*.

9. rei . . . pūblicae amantissimus: *most loyal to his country*, lit. *most loving of the common-*

*wealth* (objective gen.); *amantissimus* is the superlative of the part. *amāns*.

10. eō magis: *and all the more*, lit. *on this account (the) more*.

11. insolenter: adv., *insolently*, or *impudently*.

16. rē: *action*.

19. tardius: *absol. compar.* — *pedibus captus*: *being crippled*, lit. *being incapacitated in his feet*.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sīc ad casam longinquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum infantem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō auditō, filia fortiter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque 5 inter tēla amicōrum et hostium in aedēs pervēnisset, puerum ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

## LESSON 61

*A Choice of Evils*

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quīdam agricola, cui erant liberī octō. Is ōlim, cum subitō nūntiātum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agris ad bona liberōsque 10 servandōs summā celeritāte properāvit; aegra enim domī uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervaenisset, liberīs convocātis atque ad castellum proximum statim praemissīs, ipse uxōrem ad iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōspectū erant Indī, 15 neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonīsque relictīs, agricola, quī iam anteā statuerat cum liberīs sibi vivendum aut prō eīs moriendum esse, equum cōncendit, atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Liberōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsi Indī vestigiīs 20 sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervaenērunt; nam

1. sellā: *sella, -ae, F.*, *sedan chair*; for syntax, cf. *rāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.

2. clāmāvit: cf. *clāmor*.

3. infantem: *infāns, -antis, adj., infant*.

6. cūnīs: *cūnae, -ārum, F.*, *cradle*. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother*.

10. servandōs: agreeing with the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. *ad Gal-lōs expellendōs*, p. 35, l. 14.—*aegra*: pred. adj.

17. vivendum: sc. *esse*. Note that this and the following gerundive are impersonal; but translate *that he must*, etc.

19. vestigiīs sequēbantur: *i.e.* were following the trail (lit. *in their footsteps*).

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōsistēbat in viā, eōsque armis terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitūdinis, ūnā cum captivis aliīs ab Indīs in silvās dēducēbātur.

## LESSON 62

### *Lost in the Woods*

5 Multōs abhinc annōs quidam puer parvus mātre īsciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Qui, cum iam advesperāceret, viam reperire nōn potuit ac brevi intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliis lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque 10 aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quiēvit. Māne iterum viam invenire frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācis sustinuit; quō modō quīnque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertisit, et celeriter prōgressus in vīcum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-  
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fiunt, lēgātus prōvinciae ūnā cum comitibus paucis pueri quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum finitima adībat omnia. Quae rēs puerō salūti fuit; nam postrēmō reperti sunt quīdam barbarī,  
20 quī nūntiāvērunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. *propius*: absol. compar., *too near*. — *accesserant*: translate as if a perfect. — *cōsistēbat*: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect *dēducēbātur*, l. 4.

5. *abhinc*: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — *īsciente*: *īsciēns*, -entis, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. *profectus*: *slipping away*. — *sēcum*: *i.e. by himself*.

9. *stellās*: *stella*, -ae, F., star.

10. *suspēxisset*: *suspiciō*, 3, *suspēxi*, *suspectus*, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — *somnō gravissimō*: abl. of manner.

18. *rēs*: *proceeding*. — *puerō salūti fuit*: cf. *oppidānis . . . salūti fuit*, p. 68, l. 1.

20. *ipsum*: *he*. — *viam*: *i.e. the way to reach him*.

runt. Puerō sīc receptō, lēgātus sicās dedit eis Indis, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnis tam grātis gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

## LESSON 63

*The Battle of Saratoga*

Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, quī 5 posteā Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquām etiam salūtī civib⁹ suis fuit; tantopere enim ā militib⁹ amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.

10. Olim Saratōgæ, cum eius ḍordinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proelii ad aurēs adlātō, "Ego," inquit, "sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulāris erō;" quae cum dixisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi 15 mīlitēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laeti secūti sunt, atque impetum acerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostium cōfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Ameri- cānīs parta est.

2. ille: the boy.

3. gaudēbant: *were delighted.*

—autem: omit in translation.

4. iste: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. nōn numquam: *i.e. sometimes.*

8. ipsō: *mere.*

10. Saratōgæ: for syntax, cf.

**Philadelphiae**, p. 46, l. 1.—  
adēmisset: adimō, 3, -ēmī, -emp-  
tus, *take away.*

11. quōcum: *i.e. quō + cum.*  
—simultātem gerēbat: *he was at odds* (*simultās, -ātis, F., quarrel*).

13. iniussū imperātōris: cf. iniussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. partem: *direction.*

17. vīsa est: *from videor.*

Etsī vulnera Arnoldī nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen morti opportūnissimum erat. Odium enim perfidiae, quā ille posteā ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quīn etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvi) 5 nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfidiā victōriam sē nactū-rōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōfectum esset.

## LESSON 64

*Unwelcome Visitors*

Britannī, cum iam iterum cum Americānis gererent bellum pugnīsque nāvālibus saepe victī essent, postrēmō cōnstituērunt usque ad Lovisiānam classem mittere, sī ibi fēlicius rem gerere possent. Quārē appulsīs nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indī patrem aquārum vocābant, mīlitēs multī in litus ēgressi praedia finitima explorāre coepērunt.

15 Sīc factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, quī in villā ōtiōsus hōrā diēi ferē quārtā morābātur, mīlitēs complūris in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. Arnoldī: cf. Standisi, p. 16,  
1. 4.—tempus: *occasion*.—ta-  
men: may be omitted in transla-  
tion.

2. morti: note the case.—  
odium (-i, N.): *contempt*.—per-  
fidiae: objective gen.; translate  
“for.”—quā: the case regularly  
used with ūtor.

4. obruet: obruō, 3, -rui, -rutus,  
*dim*, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. cōfectum esset: for mood,  
cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p.  
61, l. 14.

9. nāvālibus: nāvālis, -is, -e,  
naval.

10. usque ad Lovisiānam :  
freely, *to far-away L.*—sī: *in the*  
*hope that*; cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

12. fertur: *rolls*; cf. dēlātus,  
p. 66, l. 15.—quem: for gender,  
cf. the note on *quod*, p. 30, l. 6.

15. factum est ut: *it hap-*  
*pened that* (*factum est* from *fīō*).

16. hōrā diēi ferē quārtā: i.e.  
about 10 A.M. See the note on  
p. 75.

17. rē: *happening*.



CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HōRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours—long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaererent hortātus est, et ipse pīmō fugā salūtem petīvit; sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitāvit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britanni armis impeditī summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervallō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub arbore audivit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vīdit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē periculum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invitū necāvit, multisque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britanni quaerendō dēfessī ad villam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custodiās hostium vītāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, qui oppidum haud longin-  
quum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

## LESSON 65

### *The Boyhood of Daniel Boone*

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est puer, qui posteā factus est explorātor clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā pīmā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

- 1. *fugā*: cf. p. 67, l. 6.
- 2. *tum*: *i.e.* for the time being.
- 3. *fenestrā patefactā*: abl. of way by which; translate *through*.
- *cum*: concessive.
- 7. *ab*: *from*.
- 8. *abesset*: *i.e.* was separated.
- 10. *dēspēxisset*: *dēspiciō*, 3, -spēxi, -spectus, *look down*; cf. *suspēxisset*, p. 72, l. 10.
- 12. *invītus*: cf. p. 35, l. 12.
- 14. *postquam*: freely, *when at length*. — *quaerendō*: cf. *nandō*, p. 12, l. 17.
- 15. *magnō circuitū*, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.
- 20. *factus est*: from *fiō*.
- 21. *pīmā*: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — *cōnsuēverat*: *i.e.* solēbat.

silvis ambulāns ferās saepe occidit. Ōlim, cum vespere prīmō domum nōn redisset, vicini, veritī nē puer ab Indīs aut feris esset interfactus, frequentēs convēnērunt, complūrisque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, si ullō modō eum in venire possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs caespītibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnis in ignem porrigēns humi sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōsultō sē longius contulerat in silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitībus etiam tum libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa mīlia passuum ad loca longinqua cōnstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sēdēs novās ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātrēsque arborēs ex ciderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, feris interfectis carnem ē silvā cotidiē domum reportābat. Interdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dīcitur: quō quidem tempore facib⁹ ārdentib⁹ ūti solēbat; lūmina enim, ut saepe ab explōrātōrib⁹ audivimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēliciendās magnō ūsuī sunt.

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61,  
1. 6.

5. rāmīs caespītibusque: abl.  
of means with aedificātam; trans-  
late (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: i.e. uncon-  
cerned; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute compara-  
tive.

9. etiam tum: i.e. even when  
so young.

10. libenter habitābat: i.e. he  
had a liking for living.

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of  
the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "in the woods."—  
ipsī: him; construe with grāta.

13. quās: this.

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, M., crop.

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case  
(and that dīcitur is personal).

—quō . . . tempore: i.e. at night;  
freely, on such occasions. In trans-  
lating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facib⁹: fax, facis, F.,  
torch; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 7

1. 2.—ut: as.

19. ab: from.

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on  
praeſidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

## LESSON 66

*The End of the Pequots*

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima, quae haud procul ā Novō Londīniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātis, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae 5 agricolis auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At mīlitēs longē ā lītore prōgredī nōn audēbant; qui igitur, parvō frūmentū numerō direptō tabernāculīsque paucīs incēnsīs, ē finib⁹ hostium brevi domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniūriā graviter permōtī, incendia ac caedēs 10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius praefectus iussus erat mīlitēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, qui haud longē ā castrīs Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus, 15 praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōnspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad lītus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorūrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs fīnitimās 20 adiit, ē quibus multi armātī operam suam polliciti sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. ūsui, p. 77, l. 20, and see the Vocab. — poenās . . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: *amount.* — dirēptō: *diripiō*, 3, -ripui, -reptus, *plunder* (cf. rapiō).

9. incendia . . . caedēs: translate as singulars. With incendium cf. incendō.

10. crūdēlius: *crūdēliter*, adv., *savagely*.

11. prōvinciā: *i.e. eādem prōvinciā.*

12. iussus erat: *i.e. was under orders.* — expōnere: *expōnō*, 3, -posui, -positus, *land*.

14. ita: *i.e. if he followed orders.* — posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. viis dēviis, p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the use of *ex* in the phrase *omnibus ex partibus*.

Sic postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī, rati propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus diligenter castra sua custōdiēbant.

## LESSON 67

*The End of the Pequots (Continued)*

Noctū castris appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant uxōrēs quoque liberique Indōrum, intusque audīri poterat cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignīs saltantēs, victōriās superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectāvērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēseret Indīque saltandō dēfessi somnō quiēserent gravī, subitō in castra portīs duābus intrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentinō commōtī, hostēs tamen celeriter ē lectīs exsiluērunt, tabernāculīsque interpositīs, tēla in mīlētēs conicere fortiter coepérunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse, suōsque tabernāculis ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indī miseri, ignī ē castrī fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum interfectī sunt; et si quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs sociī Indī libenter occidērunt.

In proeliō multi quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerātī, atque exercitus statim Novum Londīnium sē recipere coāctus est;

1. rati: *i.e.* arbitrātī.

p. 72, l. 10. — portīs: cf. the note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant,

18. si quī . . . , eōs: lit. if any . . . , them (cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1).

p. 57, l. 1.

7. superiōrēs: here, of time.

19. Indī: as adj. — libenter

— exspectāvērunt: waited.

occidērunt: freely, *were glad to kill*.

8. saltandō: for syntax, cf.

21. Novum Londīnium: town

nandō, p. 12, l. 17.

9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.

Digitized by Google

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem mīlitēsque exspectārent. Sed hostēs paucis post mēnsibus alterā pugnā victi sunt, neque umquam posteā iniūriam ūllam colōnis facere potuērunt; quīn etiam brevi in manūs parvās 5 dīvīsī, aliī in aliam nātiōnem ascīti sunt.

## LESSON 68

*A Difficult Escape*

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotīdiē laborābant; nam, etsi colōnī tum bellum cum Gallis Indīsque gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ūllōs nūper viderat. Sed oīlim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus ērūpērunt 10 proximīs, puerisque arreptīs sē celerrimē in silvam recēpērunt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed alter, qui plānē sentiēbat flētūm nihil prōfutūrum esse, frātrem hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam ūnā cum captivīs iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sīc 15 diēs multōs iter fecērunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longin-quum, ubi cum aliīs cīvibus suis hiemāre cōstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coepērunt puerī. Quō modō maior pīmā aestāte repperit Indōs in animō habēre in Canadām dūcere captivōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. *iussum erat*: note the gender.
2. *alterā pugnā*: we would say "in" rather than "by."
3. *neque umquam*: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.
4. *colōnis*: dat. case.
5. *aliī in aliam*: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. *minor*: *i.e. the younger*; cf. *maior*, l. 18.

12. *flētūm*: *flētūs, -ūs, M., crying*; cf. *fleō*. — *nihil*: *adverbial acc., not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect*. — *prōfutūrum esse*: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, help, or avail*.

16. *suis*: *of theirs*.

18. *maior*: cf. *minor*, l. 11. — *pīmā aestāte*: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallis vēdere. Quārē, cibō armīsque arreptis, frātrēs duo ex hibernīs noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant.  
 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carniſ eīs prōiēcit. Quae rēs puerīs salutē fuit; cum enim canēs carnē dēvorārent, barbarī nihil suspicantēs arborem præteriērunt. Quō vīsō, puerī rursus profectī per silvās errā-  
 10 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōflectī sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi anteā ignōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 69

*Stories about Daniel Boone*

Ille explōrātor clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dixi, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ōlim ē  
 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliis explōrātō-ribus quinque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indis captus, postquam ab eīs septem diēs summā diligentiā custōditus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit,  
 20 quam ipse cēterīque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucīs post annīs eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō-

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis;  
 F., slavery; cf. servus.

2. autem: and.

5. propius: quite close; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātus, -ūs, M., barking.—ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: this.

11. sibi: construe with ignōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (citerior, -ior, -ius), lit. *Nearer*, i.e. *North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēterī: contrast the force of aliis, l. 15.

ribus liberisque dēdūxit ad locum, qui castellō maximē idōneus vidēbātur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortūnā prōsperā ūsus est; sed quondam eius filia, quae errābat in agris, ut flōrēs carperet, ūnā cum puellis aliis ab Indīs capta, in silvās comp̄ plūra milia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt, puellae prūdentēs omnibus locis aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs aut humī pannōs reliquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsui erat patribus irātis, qui haud longō intervallō vestigiis insequēbantur. Barbaris victis, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.

10 Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud Indōs vivere coāctus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam prōfluentem cucurisset, nē vestīgia ūlla faceret, ad amicōs incolumis pervēnit. Multis autem ante mēnsibus uxor liberique, patrem iam pridem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs 15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

## LESSON 70

### *An English Privateer*

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsī illō ipsō tempore bellum iūstum cum Hispānis nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs Hispānorū omnibus locis spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. prūdentēs: prūdēns, -entis, tis, part., *running*, lit. *flowing* adj., *wide-awake*. — omnibus locis: forward.

cf. the note on eōdem locō, p. 7, l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — aut . . . aut: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. pannōs: pannus, -i, M., *strip of cloth*.

8. intervallō: cf. the note on p. 57, l. 4. — vestigiis: cf. p. 71, l. 19.

12. prōfluentem: prōfluēns, -en-

14. ratī: modifying the whole phrase *uxor liberique*. — propinquōs: here, as noun.

15. in: cf. the note on in silvās, p. 77, l. 12. — Citeriōrem: cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. illō ipsō: *that particular*.

17. iūustum: iūstus, -a, -um, regular.

secundum lītus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illiū regiōnis adīret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argentiū trādere cogeret.

Limae duodecim nāvigationes in portū ad ancoram consistēs bant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvigationis cōnfēstis in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, summāque celeritāte coepit īsequī; dīvitias enim etiam maiōrēs sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō ēvādere potuit, cum Britanni celeritāte tantopere superābant. Nāve trāditā, dīvitiae maximaē intus repertae sunt; quin etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse dicitur. Quae cum praefectus vidisset, gubernātōri, "Duo 15 pōcula tū habēs," inquit; "alterum mihi dandum est." Tum gubernātor miser, qui omnia trādenda plānē intellegēbat, invītus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādidit ambō.

## LESSON 71

### *A Roman Vandal*

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimis facinoribus Verris, hominis plānē sceleratī, pauca nunc dicam. Nam ille,

4. Limae : a town name ; what case?

7. suum : sc. nāvigium.—solvit : cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l.

9. 8. dīvitias : dīvitiae, -ārum, F., treasures.

10. fugiēns : cf. fugientēs, p. 69, l. 24.

11. cum : causal.—celeritāte : for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. —tantopere : cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. dīvitiae : cf. l. 8.

13. gubernātor : cf. gubernācūlum. —ipse : even.

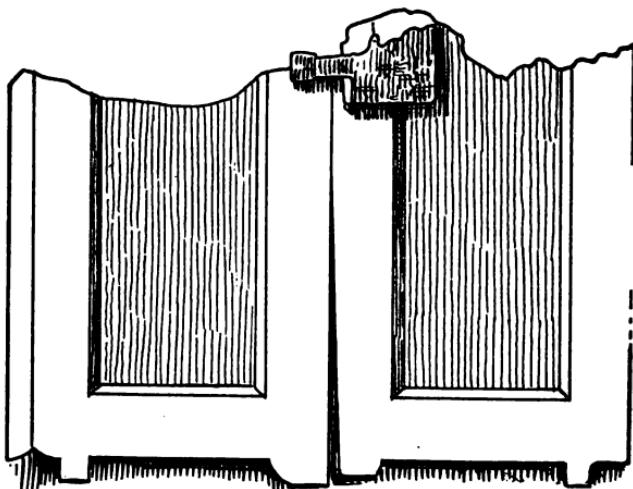
15. alterum : one (of the two).

16. trādenda : sc. esse. —plānē : full well.

17. praefectō : dat. case ; translate as if a genitive.

19. hominis : in apposition with Verris. —plānē : utterly ; cf. the rendering in the note on l.

16. —pauca : note the gender.



FÖRÉS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locis oppida templaque spoliāvit; quin etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pauperim quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quin statim ea possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suis comitibus est 5 ēlūsus.

Sicut memoriae trāditum est eum ōlim certiōrem factum cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō auditō, etsī aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium statim mīsit, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferrī iubēret. 10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōfēstīm cum pōculīs ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiēscēbat; sed ante forēs ambulābant quīdam ex ipsius amicīs, hominēs improbī, quōrum tamen cōsiliō ille multum ūtī cōnsuēverat: quī Siculō 15 statim, “Ubi sunt pōcula?” inquiunt. Tum homō miser prīmō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehe- menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō auditō, illi “Quantum nobis dabis,” inquiunt, “sī pōcula tibi nōn ēri- pientur?” Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. *praetor* (-ōris, M.) : (*as*)  
*governor*. — *templa*: see the pic-  
ture of a Sicilian temple shown on  
p. 96.

2. *tantae . . . avāritiae*: for  
syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — *pauper-  
rimi*: *pauper*, -eris, adj., *poor*.

3. *quin . . . vellet*: *without  
wishing*, lit. *but that* (*quīn*) *he  
wanted*.

4. *possidēre*: *possideō*, 2,  
-sēdi, -sessus, *possess*. — *suis*:  
note the position of the word. —  
*est ēlūsus*: *was cheated*.

6. *memoriae trāditum est* : *it  
is recorded*, lit. *it is handed down  
to remembrance*.

10. *malum*: as noun, modified  
by *maiūs*.

11. *ad praetōrem*: *to the gov-  
ernor's residence* (cf. l. 1).

12. *forte*: with the verb, render  
“chanced to”; cf. the free treat-  
ment of *libenter*, p. 77, l. 10.

13. *ipsius*: *i.e.* *Verris*. — *impro-  
bī*: *improbus*, -a, -um, *unprincipled*.

14. *ūtī*: *freely*, *depend upon*.  
— *cōnsuēverat*: cf. p. 76, l. 21.

15. *sibi*: dat. of disadvantage;  
we would say “*from him*.”

17. *auxiliō*: cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. *quantum*: as noun.

19. *ērēctus* (-a, -um, part.):  
*elected*, or *inspired*.

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum laetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōfirmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidēri, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

## LESSON 72

*Indian Vengeance*

5 Indī Americānī nōn sōlum cum colōnīs saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōnsuēvērant ācerimē. Sicut in Britanniā Novā rēx quidam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per īnsidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem finitimum, ut ipse sōlus duārum nātiōnum rēgnū obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subitō magnō cum exercitū in vīcīnī fīnēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.

15 Ubi aciēs duea īstrūctaē sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dixit sōlum cum Miantōnimōne sōlō dīmicāre, ut sine dētrimentō cēterōrum rēs diiūdicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōnsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque mīlitēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: exper-

giscor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up.*

3. mendāciō: mendāciūm, -ī, N., lie.—ūsī: translate as if a present.

4. digna . . . quae: with sub-

junct, *worthy to* (*dignus, -a, -um*).

—mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*

8. īnsidiās: see the Vocab.

9. duārum: *the two.*

10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension, cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.

16. velle: *was willing.*—sōlum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. cēterōrum: we would say “*to the others.*”—dīūdicārī: dīūdicō, I, *decide, or settle.*

18. quod: *this (proposal).*—ille: *Miantonomo.*

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī repentinā rē perterriti sē cōnfēstī in silvās palūdēsque contulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multi, rēxque ab Uncā ipsō captus est. Ab inimīcō salūtem petere dux victus 5 scilicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimīcum humī moribundū vīdisset, eius umerum sicā appetivisse dicitur, frūstumque carnis inde abscisum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tantae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

## LESSON 73

*A Tale of Brave Women*

10 Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciis, quae ad occidentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explorātōrēs quīdam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs ignōtās multa milia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idōneum nactī, procul ab amicīs in rīpā pulcherrimi flūminis 15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factis, nūntiōs mīserunt, quī eōdem mulierēs liberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs libenter domō ēgressi sunt, et nāvigīs parvī vectī secundō

1. iacentem: *prostrate*; lit. what? — repentinā rē: sc. hāc.

4. ab : *of*.

5. secūrī percussus est: *i.e.* was executed; lit. what?

6. quidem: omit in translation.

7. sicā: abl. of means.

8. inde: *i.e. from it.* — vultū laetō: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — dēvorāsse: for the form, cf. nāvigāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

10. occidentem: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. domō: the acc. and abl. of domus have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. eōdem: bearing the same relation to idem, as eō to is, and quō to qui.

17. omnēs: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. secundō: cf. the force of the prep. secundum, and contrast that of adversō (*flūmine*).

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impedītam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotidiē ē rīpis tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affecti sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs sē rīpā scaphis audācter prōgressi, nāvigm cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in periculis nōn virī sōlum sed etiam mulierēs virtūtem maximam praestitērunt. Sicut, cum scapha quae-dam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluē-  
runt in aquam frīgidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armis dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum enim ab Indis tēla conicerentur plūrima, virique sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis ad rīpam dēferrī animadvertisset, gubernāculis arreptis nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quin etiam nē tum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdedit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābi passa est.

## LESSON 74

### *The Treasure Seekers*

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēduli cōnsuēverant in cavernis maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ūlim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. vulne-rati, etc.

11. alterius: *of one* (*of the two*). — vir: *husband*.

12. adulta: *adultus, -a, -um, part., grown up*.

13. sē tegere: *i.e. get under cover*.

14. virgō (-inis, F.): *maiden*. — cum . . . animadvertisset: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculis: cf. p. 64. l. 9.

16. in cursū: *i.e. in the chan-nel*.

18. ēlābi: *ēlābor, 3, -lapsus sum, slip*; cf. prōlābor.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2. — aetātibus: *i.e. temporibus*. — crēduli: *crēdulus, -a, -um, credu-lous*.

20. cavernis: *caverna, -ae, F., cavern*.

onustae in mari naufragium fēcisse dīcuntur; interdum autem fortūnā prōsperiōre ūsi sunt. Sicut abhinc multōs annōs quidam negōtiātor, ē Britanniā Novā paucis cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi 5 gaza maxima multis ante annis naufragiō āmissa esse dīcēbatur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excidit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta finitima explōranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Olim tamen, cum nautae 10 tōtō diē diligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omnī paene sublātā ad nāvem sē dēfessi cōferrent, quidam ex eis forte submersam animadvertisit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilire eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub mari 15 cōfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vīdisse. Quō auditō, omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, cum sentirent sē iam dēmum nāvium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesiverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluērunt Indi alii; ā quibus brevī ē nāvi- giō lāminaē argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē 20 nautae, cum eōdem primā lūce cum praefectō redissent, ē mari vim argenti incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimīs facile recēpērunt.

- 1. naufragium: naufragium, -um, *graceful*. — pulchritūdine: pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty*.
- , N., *shipwreck* (*nāvis* + *frangō*).
- 2. ūsi sunt: *they have had*.
- 3. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.
- 4. tōtō diē: translate as if acc. — omni: *freely, entirely*.
- 5. quidam: as noun (sing.).
- forte: cf. the note on p. 85,
- l. 12. — submersam: *submersus*, -a, -um, part., *submerged*, i.e. *under the surface*.
- 6. algam: *alga*, -ae, F., *sea-weed*. — fōrmōsam: *fōrmōsus*, -a,
- 7. servum: *helper*.
- 8. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged*, or *came up* (*ēmergō*, 3, -mersi, -mersus).
- 9. sēsē: *i.e. sē*.
- 10. lāminaē: *lāmina*, -ae, F., *plate*, or *strip*.
- 11. primā lūce: cf. *vespere* *primō*, p. 77, l. 1.
- 12. gemmis: *gemma*, -ae, F., *jewel*.

## LESSON 75

*A Dangerous Conspiracy*

Ōlim in finibus Indōrum ab Americānis cōnstitūta est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōnstitūtā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, qui nē civēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dīmitterent s̄ timēre cooperat, omnibus locis palam dicere nōn dubitāvit sine cōnsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nūllum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliis undique convocātīs, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostisque invīsōs ē finibus suīs expellerent.

10 Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendi causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedēre nōluit: terram enim cōfirmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre mālle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam 15 prōgredī coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est irā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūrīs cōfēstī arripuērunt. Sed Americāni paucī, qui adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, mīlītēsque summā celeritātē ad lēgātūm dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territi, 20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, quī plānē sentīebat cum barbarīs sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. nē: depending on timēre,  
1. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locis: cf. p. 82, l.

6.

6. cōnsēnsū: cōnsēnsus, -ūs, M., concurrence. — Indis: dat. case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -i, N., entrance court.

12. ipsī: Tecumseh.—subsellia: subsellium, -i, N., bench.

17. pauci: the few.

18. expediērunt: i.e. expeditērunt. — ad . . . dēfendendum: cf. the construction with causā, l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est, run up.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnis Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs diligenter iam circumibat.

## LESSON 76

*A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)*

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociis redire potuit, lēgātus, sibi initium belli esse faciendum ratus, cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs flūmine adversō pauca milia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in ripam trānsiit alteram. Putābat enim (id quod factum est) barbarōs īnsidiās collocātūrōs eā in rīpā, in quā primō iter facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiis igitur flūmen trāductis, sine dētrimentō ullō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Tecumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium misit, quī diceret posterō diē Indōs condicōnēs pācis petitūrōs. Itaque Americāni prope oppidum posuērunt castra, armisque expeditis sē somnō dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō auditus est ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant; quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, militēs ē somnō excitātī ignis

5. *initium: initium, -ī, N., beginning.* The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war;* lit. what?

8. *id quod factum est: as actually proved to be the case,* lit. *the thing which (actually) happened.*

9. *eā: modifying rīpā.—in quā: upon (or along) which.*

10. *flūmen trāductis: i.e. trāns*

*flūmen ductis (cf. trādō for trānsdō).*

11. *domicilium: domicilium, -ī, N., residence.*

14. *praeerat: cf. p. 58, l. 12,* and the note.

17. *vigiliā . . . quārtā: i.e. toward morning, the night being divided into four equal watches.*

19. *quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō: cf. p. 73, l. 11.—ignis: the (camp) fires.*

cōfēstīm extīnxērunt, nē ab hostībus cōnspicī possent. Sīc trīs ferē hōrās in nocte obscūrā ab Americānīs fortissimē pugnātum est; tum primā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōnsilia sua perficere nūllō modō potuit; paucis autem post mēnsibus, cum Americānī Britannī bellum indixissent, in exercitū Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

## LESSON 77

*A Quick-Witted Messenger*

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad meridiem spectant, Americānī cum Britannīs diū gessissent bellum ac saepe superatī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperatōrem alium litterās mittere volēbat; at primō reperirī poterat nēmō, qui eās dēferre audēret, quod undique hostēs viās obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, “Ego litterās adferam,” inquit; “quidvis audēre mālō, quam domī animō morāri suspēnsō.”

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōfēstīm profecta, in itinere ab hostībus intercepta est. Quam captam mīlitēs maximā dīligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, sī quae forte nūntiae vestimentīs tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. possent: subject, mīlitēs  
(see p. 91, l. 19).

7. cum . . . indixissent:  
translate by a partic. phrase.—  
Britannīs: translate the dat.  
“upon.”

8. lēgātus: *an officer.*

13. audēret: *would venture.*

15. quam: (*rather*) than.

17. nūntia (-ae, F.): *messenger.*  
18. captam: *i.e. after her capture.*

20. posset: *could.* — sī quae: cf.  
p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit singula. Quae rēs eī salūti fuit: altera enim mulier, cum postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scilicet invenire potuit; quārē mīlitēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abīre 5 passī sunt. Illa autem summā celeritāte ad castra Americāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcit dē rēbus omnibus, quae in litterīs scriptae erant.

## LESSON 78

*Fortune favors the Brave*

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nō mine Iasper, quī semper in perīculīs maximīs libenter ver-  
10 sābātur. Sicut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnā-  
rent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlis abreptum in terram extrā mūnītiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima ho-  
stēs coniciēbant, ē castris ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum in vällō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī,  
ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe  
in īnsidiis latēbat, ut cīvibus suis, sī posset, auxiliō esset.  
Mox in cōspectum vēnērunt captīvī, quōs mīlitēs decem

1. discerpsisset: discerpō, 3,  
-cerpsi, -cerptus, *tear up*. —  
frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -i, N.,  
bit. — chartae: charta, -ae, F.,  
*paper*.

2. fuit: *proved to be*.  
4. contumēliae: translate the  
gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39,  
l. 2).

6. contendit: *pushed on*.

9. libenter versābātur: freely,  
*delighted to be*.

11. vēxillum (-i, N.): *flag*, cf.  
the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, *thick and  
fast*.

16. capitīs: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and  
the note. — Savannam: see the  
note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortēm:  
*i.e. to execution*.

custōdiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armis sub arborib⁹ relict⁹, aquam haurīre properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amīcus ērūpērunt ē latebris, duōbusque custōdibus occīs⁹ militēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: 5 deinde cum captīvis Britannicīs atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōfēstīm ad castra Americānā sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēliciter ēvēnērunt; paucīs enim post annīs interfectus est, cum summā audāciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vällō vēxillum 10 dēfixisset Americānum.

## LESSON 79

### *Andrew Jackson*

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestīs Americānī cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, qui obscūrō locō nātus, postrēmō rei pūblicae prīnceps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod prīnum Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, 15 fortiter versātus, ūnā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbō gravi affectus est. Māter autem brevi effīcere potuit ut filii ambō cum captīvis Britannīs commūtārentur.

Multīs post annīs, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānīs

1. quibus: *i.e.* militibus.—  
ad: *near*.

2. haurire: *hauriō*, 4, *hausi*,  
*haustus*, *draw*.

3. duōbus: *the two*.

7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. cum: conjunction.

9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. locō: *station*; for syntax,  
cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*.—in  
bellō, quod prīnum: *i.e.* in prīmō  
bellō, quod.

16. efficere . . . ut: *freely, arrange that*; lit. what?

17. captīvis: translate as adj.  
—commūtārentur: *commūtō*, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, *cum* may be rendered “for.”

19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indī, quōdam castellō Americanōrum ex-pugnātō, nōn sōlum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs liberōsque summā crūdēlitātē occīdērunt. Quā caede nūntiātā, Iacsō, dīlēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs co-  
sercēret; cumque multa milia passuum iter fēcisset, etsī  
militēs labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē  
longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munītis-sima, quae in rīpā flūminis Tallapūsa posuerant Indī.  
Ubi āriter pugnātum est; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēs-  
que paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere  
coācti sunt. Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitātē rēgem  
Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus  
petitum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs libe-rōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tole-  
rābant.

## LESSON 80

*Pirates Ashore*

Quondam in mari Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pīrātae, qui omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicīs praeerat complūribus.  
Is ūlim oppugnāre cōnstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam anteā spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dīcēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vēnērunt; tum

4. dīlēctū: dīlēctus, -ūs, M.,  
*levy.*

5. etsī: modifying the pre-ceding clause.

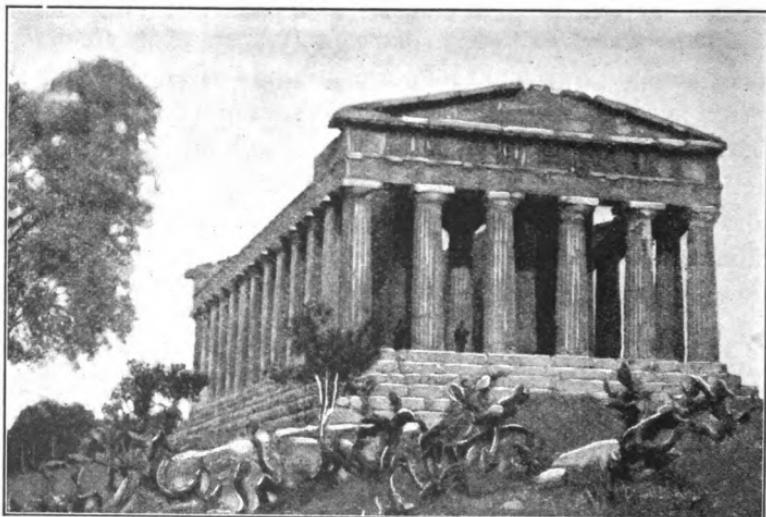
6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same con-struction as with ūtor.

13. petitum: supine; another way of saying *ut peteret.* — frūmentō: (*a contribution of*) grain.

14. latentēs: *in their hiding places:* lit. what?

17. nāvigābant: *kept sailing.*



TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captīvus quīdam, qui minus diligenter custōdiēbātur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad lītū : quī sine morā oppidānōs dē cōnsiliis pīrātārum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā diligentiā bona sua cēlāre coēpērunt. Deinde, postquam pīrātāe ē nāvibus ēgressī mīlitēs paucōs, qui oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsi, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs primō coniēcērunt plūrima ; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrīmenti etiam maiōris coāctī, sē maestī dēdidērunt. Quōs omnīs pīrātāe, victōriā potitī, in templā quae-dam coēgērunt. Ubi illi fame sunt paene necāti ; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnīnō captīvōrum miserōrum oblīviscerentur.

## LESSON 81

*Carrying the Tribute*

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-  
15 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pīrātāe eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Olim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūtī istius ferendī causā ad Africām nāvigāsset, rēx ille, quī forte nūntium cum dōnō Bȳzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. minus : *not very* ; what use  
of the compar.?

4. nūntiō : *news*, or *informa-tion*.

5. cēlāre : cēlō, 1, *conceal*, or  
*hide*.

6. paucōs : cf. pauci, p. 90, l.

17. — praesidiō : cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. quōs omnīs : cf. quī omnēs,  
p. 57, l. 8.

11. coēgērunt : *crowded*. — vic-tōrēs : *victor*, -ōris, M., *victor*.

12. tam bene sē habēbant :  
*were having so good a time*.

15. facta est : *freely*, *had*  
*grown*. — pendere : pendō, 3, pe-pendi, pēnsus, *pay*.

16. nē : *so that . . . not*.

19. Bȳzantium : see the note  
on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānīs postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scilicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, “Nōnne servī estis?” inquit: “nōnne 5 tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōfēstīm suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Medi-terrāneō nāvigant, ā pīrātis statim capientur.” Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō Bīzantium proficisci coāctus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre; 10 cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad litus Africæ rursus appulsa esset, rēx Africānus, qui iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānīs postulātum īrī, praefectum iussit iterum Bīzantium nāvigāre; cumque id 15 recūsāret, etiam mortem praeſentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō visō, tantus timor rēgis animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumēliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redīre domum paterētur.

## LESSON 82

### *A Successful Ambuscade*

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum 20 clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbarīs incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15.—  
ab: *of*.

4. nōnne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer “yes.”

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom*; lit. (*so help*) me, Hercules.

8. Bīzantium: translate the acc. “for”; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of diplōma, -atis, N., *passport*.

13. postulātum īrī: what infin.?

15. recūsāret: *object to*; subject, praefectus. — minātus est: minor, *I, threaten*.

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumēliārum: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when*, lit. *during which*.

magna vīs frūmentī ab eīs integra in agrīs relictā est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmenti cōpiam nōn temerē dimittendam ratus, ab oppidō fīnitimō lēgātum cum militibus proficīscī iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret. 5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfēstīm in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediente frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamen cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria mīlia passuum iter faciendum erat) 10 mīlitēs primō armīs expeditis prōgredī iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolumē ēvāsisset, omnia pericula suōs iam effūgisse arbitrātus, viā minus diligenter explorātā, in insidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcerant in palūde quādam, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum 15 ubi perventum est, repente auditus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī mīlitēs nūllō modō resistere potuērunt, praesertim cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quīn etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē prop- 20 ter clādem ibi acceptam hic locus posteā “rīvus cruentus” appellābātur.

### LESSON 83

#### *An Intrepid Commander*

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphīs ūlim eō cōnsiliō profectī sunt, ut cum Indīs fīnitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. fīnitimō: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, F., fruit (of the earth); pl., *crop*. — bellī

sēdem: *i.e. the base of operations.*

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden.* — multōs: see the note on *rati*, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidī, *fall into* (*in+cadō*).

14. rīvus: *brook.*

19. octōve: *i.e. octō + ve.*

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax, cf. primō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eis indicerent bellum, si Philippum adiuvare perseverarent. E scaphis egressi, per agros contendebant coloni, cum subito ululatus auditus est, et barbari impetu repentinō militēs ad litus sē recipere coegerunt: nam in 5 eō quoque proeliō Indi numerō erant multō superiōrēs; dux enim colonōrum quīndecim tantum militēs sēcum tum habebat.

Is autem, vir summae cōstantiae, locum idōneum nactus, suos hortatus est nē sē animō dēmitterent, et ipse 10 āriter dīmicāvit. Dum rēs sic geritur, animadvertisit forte unum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nullō modō pugnare posset. Quō visō, hominem iussit lapidēs comportare, qui prō mūnitiōne ūsui essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subito lapidem percussit, quem manibus 15 ferēbat; quō mirāculō permōtus (nam vītam ā dīs ita servātam esse existimābat), animōs homō resūmpsīt, summāque virtute unā cum cēterīs pugnāvit.

Brevi tēla colonōrum dēficerē coepérunt; sed nāvis adventū opportūnō servāti sunt. Dux tamen, cum nōllet 20 Indōs putare sē timōre discessisse, etiam tum in agris paulum morātus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulō ante reliquerat.

i. eis: cf. the note on Britan-nīs, p. 92, l. 7.

4. ad: toward.

8. locum: position.

9. animō: for syntax, cf. the more familiar phrase, animō dēmissus.

11. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

12. quō: neut. — lapidēs: lapis, -idis, M., stone.

13. prō: as, or for. — ūsui: cf. p. 89, l. 8. — essent: note the

mood. — iste: the soldier.

14. manibus: cf. p. 7, l. 9.

15. mirāculō: mirāculum, -i, N., providence, lit. strange happening.

16. animōs: courage. — resūmp-sit: resūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmpsus, recover.

19. cum nōllet: translate by a partic. phrase.

20. timōre: abl. of cause.

21. petasum: petasus, -i, M., broad-brimmed hat.

## LESSON 84

*Burned at the Stake*

Dē crūdēlitāte Indōrum multa nārrantur. Sicut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallis barbarisque esset expugnatū, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captivis miseris cōfēstī domum consūtērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captivis, homō obēsus, qui onus grave ferre coāctus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēpositū atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hic autem ab Indīs brevī repertus, veste dētractā per nivem nūdus prōgredī est coāctus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tūm barbarī, captivō ad arborem religatō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētūr. Quīn etiam, nē hōc quidem contenti, frūsta abscidērunt viscerum, ut cruciātū captivī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent rīdentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. amplius: *i.e. more (than); cf. such expressions as "above a thousand."*

6. obēsus (-a, -um): *stout. — tardius: absol. compar.*

7. onus: *onus, -eris, N., load.*

9. hīc: *the adv. — veste: i.e. vestimentō.*

11. iter factum est: *translate by an active form.*

12. ignem: *the fire. — admovēbant: kept moving up.*

13. redūcēbant: *sc. eum (i.e. ignem). For the force of this imperfect, cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.*

14. quō: *replacing ut, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative. — cruciārētū: cruciō, i, (*keep in*) torture. — hōc: (neut.) noun.*

15. contenti: *contentus, -a, -um, with abl., content (*with*). — frūsta: not frūstrā. — viscerum: viscus, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.) flesh.*

16. pāscerent: *pāscō, 3, pāvī, pāstus, with abl., feast . . . (upon). Strictly, cruciātū is abl. of means.*

17. deesset: *what is the literal force of the word (dē + sum)?*

mortui in favillam residere passi sunt, quō posteā maiōre amici dolore afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserium.

## LESSON 85

*An Early Morning Surprise*

Olim Galli Indique castellum quoddam hieme expugnare cōstituerant. Quārē per nivem altani summō labōre progressi, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō castra collocāvērunt; deinde, impedimentis praesidiō paucis relictis, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnitōnēs pedetemptim accessērunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnis audirētur; quam ob rem ab imperātōre iussī erant paulum prōgredi, tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredi, ut strepitus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventōrum vidērētur. At nihil suspicābantur colōni; quin etiam custōdēs ipsi somnō gravissimō quiēscēbant. Itaque hostēs facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex partē tam alta fuit, ut mūnitōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum, ululatū ācrī sublātō, barbari colōnōs perterritōs cōfēstīm dētrāxērunt ē lectis, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. mortui: as noun (gen. masc.). — favillam: favilla, -ae, F., embers. — residere: residō, 3, -sēdi, sink down. — quō: cf. p. 101, l. 14. — maiōre: (*all the*) greater.

2. amici: nom. pl.  
4. hieme: abl. of time when or within which.

7. paucis: as (masc.) noun.  
8. exācta: from exigō; construe with vigiliā, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. gelū: gelus, -ūs, M., frost.—

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, crusted, lit. stiff.

10. nē: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. facientis: modifying exercitūs. — sonus: pred. nom. with vidērētur (sc. esse). — tantum: the adv.

16. ūnā ex parte: cf. omnibus ex partibus, p. 44, l. 6.

17. exstārent: exstō, 1, —, —, project, or appear (above).

19. caedēs, etc.: cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potiti sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiisque aliquandō dēfessī, sē ad silvam contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta parta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; 5 quōrum ūnum cum barbari expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlis inde coniectis multī interfecti erant.

## LESSON 86

*Some Very Distinguished Geese*

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Galli antiqui abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vīcissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Prīmō 10 interdiū hostēs adorti sunt, summāque audaciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmāni dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam posteā idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum 15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibi inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucis ante diēbus

1. *praedā*: for syntax, cf. victoriā, p. 95, l. 11.—*ad*: toward.
2. *aliquandō*: *i.e.* dēmum.
3. *incruenta*: incruentus, -a, -um, lit. bloodless; translate freely.
- *parta erat*: from partiō.

5. *quōrum*: neut.
7. *Galli*: as on p. 52, l. 12.—*antiqui*: antiquus, -a, -um, ancient.
8. *cum*: after.—*exercitūs*: note the ū.
9. *ipsam*: proper. The Romans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. *interdiū*: in contrast to noctū, l. 16.—*hostēs*: subject of the verb.

11. *dēsuper*: adv., from above.
12. *idem audērent*: repeated the venture; lit. what?
14. *deinde*: later.
15. *nec*: and yet . . . not.
17. *sēmitā*: abl. of way by which (*sēmita*, -ae, F., footpath).

Gallus quidam forte animadverterat, tertīā ferē vigiliā ūnus miles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illī rursus aliōs. Quō modō Gallī complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnē-  
 5 runt, ut custōdēs nihil sentirent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitāti sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacrī clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānis salūti fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōnstantiae, sonō ācrī audītō,  
 10 comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfēstīm in pīnum Gallum im-  
 petum fēcit ācerrimū, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētri-  
 mentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra  
 maestī sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 87

*An Army of Two*

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsi sunt colōni eis  
 15 in bellīs, quae cum Britannis et Indīs gessērunt. Sicut  
 oīlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem nāvis Britannica  
 adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in ripā forte stābant liberi duo;  
 quī veritī nē, sī agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. *inermis* (-is, -e): *without*  
*(his) arms*, lit. *unarmed*.

3. *sequentēs*: acc. masc., *those following*. — *illi*: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. *summum*: *the top of*; cf. the use of *prīmā*, p. 22, l. 7.

6. *ānserēs*: *ānser*, -eris, M., *goose*. — *sacrī*: *sacer*, -cra, -crum, with gen., *sacred(to)*. — *clangōrem*: *clangor*, -ōris, M., *cry*.

7. *ēdidērunt*: from *ēdō* (not *edō*).

8. **M.** : i.e. **Mārcus**.

11. *cāsū*: *fall*. — *dēturbāvit*: *dēturbō*, I, *carry off (one's) feet*.

12. *cōnātū dēsistere*: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. *longum est*: 'twould be a long (tale); cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of possum, e.g. p. 41, l. 7.

17. *forte*: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. *exspectāssent*: *should wait for*; lit. *should have waited for*.

sērō adferrētur, cōnstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsi dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque liberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissernt, armis 5 cōfēstīm arreptīs, portā posticā in silvam clam ēgressi sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs prope-rāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britanni, qui cōspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manū magnam in aedēs convēnisce rati, pedetemptim 10 tamen prōgredi persevērāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prō-munturium nāvigant, subitō alter ex liberis inmisit tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; qui cum prōlapsus gubernācula ē manibus dimīssisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine se-cundō ferri copta est. Quam ob rem Britanni, sē sic omnis 15 interfici posse arbitrāti, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

## LESSON 88

*Horatius at the Bridge*

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore simili sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antiquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset 20 Rōmānis indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentinō captum est

1. sērō: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. domum: (*their*) *home*. — posita erat: *had been built*.

5. portā: *door*; for syntax, cf. sēmitā, p. 103, l. 17. — posticā: *posticus, -a, -um, back*.

7. idem: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — saepius: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. quicquam: neut. of quis-quam (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

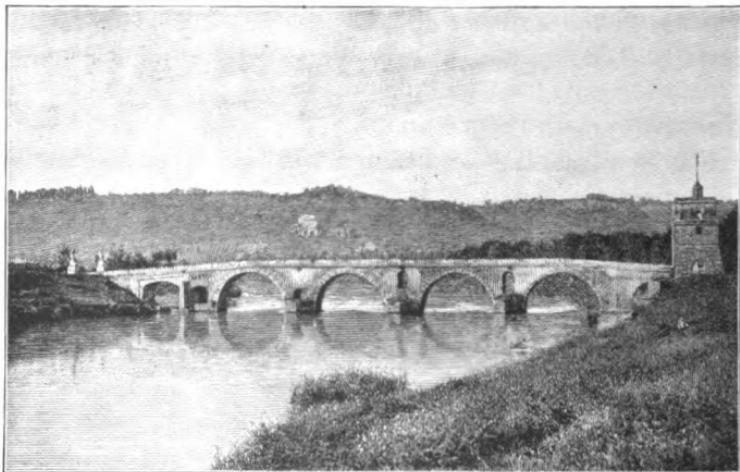
11. alter ex: *one of* (the two).

13. secundō: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. copta est: cf. the note on coeptus est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. Rōmae: note that this is a town name.

20. Iāniculum: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



Pōns

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

Rōmānīque perterriti trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, qui sentiēbat hostēs, nisi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potītūrōs, civis suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumpe-  
5 rent, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amicīs fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum dēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad prīnum aditum pontis fortiter prōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōstituit. Quā audāciā obstupefacti, hostēs primō paulum morāti sunt, deinde impetum  
10 ācriōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dimicābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim armātus dēsiluit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit,  
15 quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amicōs duo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sic memoriae trāditum est; Livius autem (ā quō haec nārrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam fidei habuisse palam cōfītētur.

1. quam celerrimē: translate freely.

3. pōns (pontis, M.): *bridge*. — esset perruptus: cf. exspectā-sent, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

4. ferrō: ferrum, -ī, N., *iron*; freely, *the ax*.

5. cum: *while*.

6. pudor (-ōris, M.): *shame*.

7. patiēbātur: we would say "would not allow"; cf. vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — aditum: aditus, -ūs, M., *approach*. — pontis: cf. l. 3.

8. obstupefacti: obstupefac-tus, -a, -um, part., *amazed*.

10. minās: minae, -ārum, F.: *threats*.

11. vōciferāns: vōciferor, 1, shout out. — dimicābat: fought on.

— locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. dēsiluit: dēsiliō, 4, -silui, leap down.

14. quō: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — exiguā parte, etc.: translate by a "while" clause.

16. memoriae, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — haec: neuter.

17. apud posterōs: i.e. in the following generations; lit. what? — plūs: see multus. — glōriae: partitive gen.

18. cōfītētur: cōfīteor, 2, -fessus sum, admit.

## LESSON 89

*A Favor Repaid*

Ōlim Indus ignōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus erat, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quidam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōflectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque pecūniā solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōditūrum.

Paucis post annis colōnus ipse ab Indis captus est et in Canadā dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe lignātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus labōrāret, 10 subitō in cōspectum vēnit Indus quidam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium veniret. Colōnus haud invītus pollicitus est; tum īsidiās veritus cōsilium mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōstitūtum. Paucis post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque 15 hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum iret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsī timor eius occupābat animum, finemque itineris omnīnō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, po- 20 strēmō ad oppidum pervaenērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsis cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiām."

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.): hungry. — cum: *inasmuch as.*

4. cōflectum: *exhausted.* — caupōnam: *caupōna, -ae, F., mistress of (the) inn.*

8. lignātiōnis: cf. the use of the gerundive with causā to express purpose.

14. Indus: *the Indian.*

15. dēstinātum: *dēstinātus, -a, -um, designated.*

16. sē: *obj. of sequī.*

17. eius: *modifier of animum.*

18. finem: *contrast finēs.*

20. ut suum: *as his own.*

21. is: *the man.*

22. grātiām: *contrast the meaning of grātiās, l. 5.*

## LESSON 90

*An Earthquake in Colonial Times*

Cum iam colōni plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravi quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad auris adlātō, colōni graviter permōti ē lectis cōnfēstīm 5 exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactāri; quīn etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundi ultima aut certē ades-set. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdēbantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem bovēs, cum mūgitūs maximōs ēderent, omnīs in partēs per-10 terrī cucurrērunt.

Quidam cōfirmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus proximis complūrēs cōsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs; 15 multīque hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, propter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humi dēpressus erat, posteā hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. mōtus (-ūs, M.): lit. *move-  
ment*.

5. labefactāri: *labefactō*, I, *shake down*.—erant quī: *there  
were (some) who*. The subjunc-tive is used regularly after any tense of sunt qui or nēmō est qui.

6. mundi: *mundus*, -ī, M., *the  
world*.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. cum . . . ēderent: note the ē, and translate by a partic. phrase.—mūgitūs: *mūgitus*, -ūs, M., *bel-  
lowing*.

11. quīdam: *here, noun.—per-  
along*.

12. hiātus (-ūs, M.): *with gen.,  
cleft (in)*, lit. *yawning (of)*.

13. levis (-is, -e): *light (of  
weight)*.—efferēbātur: *i.e. kept  
rising*; lit. *what?*

16. cultum: *cultus*, -ūs, M., *worship*.

17. humi: *into the ground;  
what is the commoner meaning?*

18. dēpressus erat: *dēprimō*, 3,  
-pressi, -pressus, *sink*.—glaciem  
factam esse: *i.e. froze solid*.

esse, quamquam anteā omnī tempore anni ūberius fluere cōsuēverat.

## LESSON 91

*Evils of the Slave Trade*

Gentēs, quae Āfricam incolunt, quondam inter sē saepe dīmicābant, captivique ā negōtiātōribus empti, nāvibus in 5 terrās sunt trānsportātī diversās, ubi dominis novis trāditī summīs labōribus aetātem in agrīs agēbant. Dum autem nāvigant, condiciō captivōrum miserrima erat; nam trāditum est dominōs, qui quaestum volēbant facere quam maximum neque aliud cūrābant, valētūdinī salūtique ser- 10 vōrum operam minimam dedisse.

Qui igitur miseri in locīs angustīs foedisque procul ā luce caelīque spīritū saepe claudēbantur. Quin etiam interdum, ut nāvēs quam plūrimōs portārent, inter sē vinculīs iūnctī, supīnī diēs noctēsque iacēre coactī sunt, spatiō minimō 15 tantum relictō, ubi pauci vice alternā sē exercēre possent: quōrum cruciātus, tempestāte coortā, maximus erat; tum enim foris omnibus clausīs vix respīrāre poterant, multīque

1. quamquam: *whereas*. — ūberius: adv. (positive not in use), *very freely*.

4. nāvibus: *by ship*.  
6. labōribus: translate as sing.  
— aetātem: cf. *vitam* with the same verb, p. 61, l. 13. — dum . . . nāvigant, etc.: *freely, it was, however, while they were on shipboard, that, etc.*

9. aliud: *anything else*.  
11. qui . . . miserī: *the poor wretches*. — locīs: *quarters*. — foedis: *foedus, -a, -um, foul*.

12. caelī: (*open*) *air*. — spīritū: *spīritus, -ūs, M.*, *breath*.

13. inter sē: *i.e. to one another*. — iūnctī: *iungō, 3, iūnxi, iūnctus, bind*.

15. pauci: *i.e. small groups*. — vice alternā, abl. phrase, *in turn*. — exercēre: *exerceō, 2, -ūi, -itus, exercise*. — possent: note the mood.

16. quōrum: (*but*) *their*. — tempestāte coortā: translate by a "when" clause.

17. foris: *forus, -ī, M., gangway*. — respīrāre: *respīrō, 1, breathe*.

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vīvī, vinculis retenti, inter mortuōs iacēre cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

## LESSON 92

*A Pirate Outdone*

Illis temporibus, cum servī plūrimi ex Āfricā in terrās diversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut connectō in vincula aut interfēctō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō modō pīrātae factī secundum lītus Āfricae ultrō citrōque nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

Quōrum ē numerō quīdam in portum ōlim vecti longin-quum, ubi in litore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica, lēgātūm tēla aurumque ē castrīs ad sē mittere summā superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōstantiae, aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-sūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātūs Britan-nicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castrīs sē recipere coāctus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum custōdibus cōfēstīm ad ducem mīsērunt. Iste scilicet

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant,  
p. 7, l. 17.—factum est ut: cf.

p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent: translate both the subjunctives “should.”

5. mari: *the high seas.*

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce.*

10. ē: *of.*

12. aurum: do not confuse aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on

p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. esset per-ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. īrā commōtī: freely, *filled with wrath.*

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under guard.*—ducem: *(their) chief.*

hominem horrendis exsecratiōnibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecratiōnibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs ei salūtī fuit; nam pīrātae cēterī, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vitam homini concessērunt, quod male dicendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

## LESSON 93

*Colonization in Africa*

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, 10 colōniās in Africā statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās libertīnī mitterentur; illīsque temporibus erant etiam qui servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sīc in patriam redūci posse existimārent.

Colōniae, quae prīmō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, 15 et saepe cum incolīs Africānīs pugnandum erat. Sicut oīlim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō īnsulāque emptīs

- 1. exsecratiōnibus: exsecratiō, -ōnis, F., curse.
- oriuntur: orior, 4, ortus sum, arise (cf. cōorior).
- 5. novā rē: at the unexpected turn (of events); abl. of cause.
- dēlectātī: dēlectatus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted.
- dēlectātī: dēlectatus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted.
- libertīnī: libertinus, -i, M., freedman.— mitterentur: note the mood.
- dēlectātī: dēlectatus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted.
- libertīnī: libertinus, -i, M., freedman.— mitterentur: note the mood.
- 7. dicendō: abl. of specification.
- 9. mala: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. bona.— emptiōne servōrum: freely, traffic in slaves; lit. what?
- patriam: i.e. (their) right-ful country.— posse: could.
- 11. libertīnī: libertinus, -i, M., freedman.— mitterentur: note the mood.
- 12. patriam: i.e. (their) right-ful country.— posse: could.
- 13. existimārent: cf. the note on erant qui, p. 109, l. 5.
- 14. eō: the adv.; for meaning, cf. quō, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in litore condidissent, natiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrinōs illic cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) nīox tōta repri-  
5 merētur. Quārē, armātis undique convocā.īs, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrium. Intrā mūnitiōnēs erant dux aeger et trigintā quīnque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illi, cum in proeliō quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfecti  
10 essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniē- cērunt. Paucis autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbarīs redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātim numerō vīribusque aucta est.

## LESSON 94

*A Prize Won and Lost*

15 Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrā- neum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vīdērunt; quō visō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritāte insequi iussit. Dum autem vēlis rēmīsque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditīs  
20 adhaesit, neque ullō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. molestē ferēbant, etc.: *i.e.* were much wrought up that, etc.  
— illic: adv., *there*.

4. tōta: translate as if an adv.

6. intrā: *behind*.

8. cum: *after*.

9. ipsōrum: *their*.

10. occupātōs: *busied*.

12. nē . . . quidem: see the Vocab.

13. haec quidem colōnia: *freely*,

*this particular colony*; lit. what? (Do not confuse *quidem* with *quidam*.)

14. vīribus: contrast the meaning of *vīs* and *vīrēs* (see the Vocab.).

19. rēmīs: *rēmus*, -ī, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both sails and oars, and *vēlis rēmīsque* came to be a standing phrase for "at full speed."

secundum litus nūntiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnērunt, et Americāni, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coācti sunt.

Quā victoriā partā, rēx pīrātarūm, veritus nē aliae nāvēs longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnitiōnēs fīrmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātis captivī tantā diligentiā custōdiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eis nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniām dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perfici; illi autem pecūniām acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbrii per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānis saepe intulērunt. Tum mīris modis poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exiret. Interdum autem, pecūniā lictōribus datā, storeis interpositis nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic rei praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdicābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

## LESSON 95

### *A Prize Won and Lost (Continued)*

20 Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captivī scilicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely,  
to the attack. What part of the verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, lighten.

10. vellet: he was anxious (that). — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3, fūdī, -fūsus, squander. — ēbrii: ēbrius, -a, -um, intoxicated.

13. mīris modis: transl. as sing.  
— hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (*placed flat*) on his back. — sola: solum, -i, N., sole (of the foot). — verberābantur: verberō, 1, beat. — idque: freely, and that too; strictly, id is subject of fiēbat supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.): blood. — exiret: freely, flowed. — lictōribus: lictor, -ōris, M., policeman.

16. storeis: storea, -ae, F., mat.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsit, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, qui eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō venīret prae-  
5 damque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litteris acceptīs, suspiciōnis vītandae causā liburnicam mīsit; quae nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pīrātae qui in eā custōdiās agēbant, veriti nē liburnica in nāvem inliderētur, magnā vōce gubern-  
10 nātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pīrātae liburnicam vagantem pro-  
pius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā  
armātī gladiīs dēstrīctīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt  
15 atque in hostis perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerīnum.

Pīrātae fortissimē dīmicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad  
ūnum occisi sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent,  
ignēs multī simul locīs nāvi longae Americānī ipsī admōvē-  
runt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad  
20 classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsū classe est oppugnātum,  
atque invitus rēx pīrātarum captivōs Americānōs incolumēs  
abire patī coāctus est.

3. quibus: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. cīvibus auxiliō: cf. the same construction with the verb sum.

6. liburnicam: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. eā: i.e. nāve longā.

9. magnā: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. respōnsō: noun.—dēceptī:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, throw off (one's) guard. — vagantem: erratic; lit. what? (cf. vagantēs, p. 114, l. 12). — propius: absol. compar., very close.

14. dēstrictis: dēstrictus, -a, -um, part., drawn.

19. quattuor: as noun. — salvā: i.e. incolūmī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. invitus: translate by a phrase. — incolumēs: scot free.

## LESSON 96

*A Mysterious Disappearance*

Colōniis multis iam in Americam dēductis, Galli etiam in Indōrum finēs sacerdōtēs mittere cōsuēverant, nōn sōlum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illi amīcī essent, sī quandō cum Britannis dimicandum esset. Qui hominēs sānc̄ti interdum maximis in periculis versābantur; sicut olim in regiōnibus longinquīs, quae posteā cīvitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacerdōtēs complūrēs, qui cum negōtiātōribus paucis castellum parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs facti sunt Indōs peregrinōs omnīs occīdere cōstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdōtēs, neque eīs ullae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadām veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad convīvium vocāvērunt. Illi convēnērunt laeti; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdōtēs apposuerant, domum regressi in tabernāculis mox sōpitī iacēbant. Tum Galli silentiō scaphās ad rīpam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadām versus profecti sunt.

Māne Indi vidērunt castellum clausum; quā rē animadversā, prīmō sacerdōtēs vōta facere crēdēbant. Postrēmō tamen, fenestrī ingressī, intus esse nēminem

1. colōniis . . . dēductis:  
translate by a "when" clause.

4. sī quandō: cf. p. 54, l. 4.

5. sānc̄ti: sānctus, -a, -um,  
pious.

6. versābantur: freely, were  
exposed (to).

11. eīs: dat. case.

14. omnia: note the gender.

15. convīvium: convīvium, -ī,  
N., feast. Cf. the illustration on  
the opposite page.

21. vōta facere: to be at prayers  
(vōtum, -ī, N., prayer).

22. fenestrī: cf. the note on  
p. 76, l. 3.



CONVIVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallis ūllās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgisse iūdicābant.

## LESSON 97

*Early Days in Liberia*

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Liberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis no-  
5 vae cīvitātī inimicissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfrī autem quae-  
stum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitūdō barbarō-  
rum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audita est. Sed  
10 in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdōtem quendam condita  
erant; qui, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, qui eisdem in aedibus  
habitābant, tēla cōfēstīm in hostīs inmittere coepit, mul-  
tōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comi-  
tibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī  
15 circum aedēs in terrā dēfixī erant. Illum autem ūnus ex  
fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarique cēterī, hōc cāsū per-  
territī, cōfēstīm vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in sil-  
vam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem  
mortuum in colōnōrum potestātē relictum, corporis quaerendi

1. timōre maximō: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?

4. Liberia: note the significance of the name (*cf. libertās*).

6. emptiōnem servōrum: *cf. p. 112, l. 9.* — *reprimendam*: translate the gerundive “must.”

9. viam: (*their*) way. — *rumpere*: translate as if a present part. (*rumpō*, 3, *rūpī*, ruptus, lit. break).

10. apud: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?

11. fabrīs: *faber, -bri, M., carpenter.*

12. tēla . . . inmittere coepit: *opened fire.*

14. pālōs: *pālus, -i, M., stake; pl., palisade.*

19. in . . . potestātē: *freely, in the hands.* — *relictum*: *sc. esse.*

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fēcērunt acerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmīcātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressi sunt.

## LESSON 98

*An Experience with Robbers*

5 Quondam in rīpis illius flūminis, qui linguā Indōrum pater aquārum appellābātur, pīrātae multi in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illīs temporibus mercibus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fēcerant, ibique summā audāciā 10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum ōlim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlis passīs incolumis est praetervectus; qui autem ad rīpam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae, 15 qui nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dīmittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūti, et locō opportūnō in īnsidiīs iam latēbant; qui, nāve

1. identidem: adv., *time and again.*

2. hōram amplius: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. proeliō: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. qui: for gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — linguā: we would say, "in the language."

6. spēluncīs: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave.*

7. mercibus: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise.*

9. ibi: *at that point.*

10. vel: *even.* — maximās: *of the largest size.*

12. nactus: *freely, with the aid of;* lit. what? — passīs: see the Vocab. under *pandō.*

13. duo diēs: *for the space of two days.*

15. praetereuntem: from *praeterēre.*

16. rēctā: *rēctus, -a, -um, straight, or direct.* The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad rīpam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem redūcere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gau-  
5 dēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amīcitiam pīrātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse fu-  
tūrum. Sed ūlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pīrātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō signō nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad  
10 rīpam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōnfēstī solvit ac summā celeritāte domum profectus est.

## LESSON 99

### *The Capture of Stony Point*

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellis complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-  
15 stella sua magnō esse in perīculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse existimābant. Quam ad rem cōficiendam dēlēctus est quidam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī anteā facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātīs, Americānī, per silvās clam pro-  
20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebrīs cō-

1. captōs: translate as if cēpē-  
runt et.

3. coquus (-ī, m.): *cook*. —  
ūsus est: *put into execution*.

6. inrēpsit: *inrēpō*, 3, -rēpsi,  
*worm (one's) way*.

7. omnibus: *i.e. for the whole  
party*.

8. quō signō: cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. nandō: cf. p. 12, l. 17.

15. magnō: modifier of perī-  
culō.

16. dēlenda esse: for the trans-  
lation, cf. the note on reprimen-  
dam, p. 118, l. 6.

18. ausus erat: freely, *had per-  
formed*.

20. sōlis: *sōl*, *sōlis*, M., *sun*. —  
occāsū: abl. of time when (*occāsus*,  
-ūs, M., lit. *setting*).

sēdērunt, ibique hōrās complūris morātī sunt; tum tertīā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Āfrō, qui Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo militēs, quī vestimenta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspicantēs hominēs propius accēdere passī sunt; Pompēius enim erat omnibus nōtus, quod anteā ad castra saepe vēnerat ut vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnū eī ā Britannis interdum datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā militibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et fortissimē dīmicāvērunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, qui brevī dēiēcērunt opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā diligentīā ibi effēcerant.

## LESSON 100

*Nathan Hale*

Postquam Britannī Longā insulā tōtā potītī sunt, Vasingtō tamen Novī Eborācī aliquamdiū morātus est, cum discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. cum . . . ūterentur: translate by a partic. phrase. — duce: (as) guide.

3. quī . . . appellābātur: 3, -gressus sum, go on ahead.

4. praegrediēbantur: praegredior, 3, -gressus sum, go on ahead.

5. nihil suspicantēs: i.e. without suspicion.

6. propius: cf. the force of the word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. omnibus: as (masc.) noun dat. case.

8. sīgnū: countersign.

9. datum erat: had been communicated. — factum est ut: cf. p. 74, l. 15. — sine strepitū: without (making any) disturbance.

12. concurrērunt: sc. Britannī.

18. Novī Eborācī: locative case; cf. domī and humī.

19. factus esset: cf. exspectāsent, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, qui veste mūtāta castra Britannica speculandī causā adīre vellet; postrēmō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: qui, vestimentis magistrī puerōrum sūmptis, liburnicā vectus ad insulam incolumis pervenit. Ubi Britanni, qui nihil suspicābantur, hominem liberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passī sunt. Ille autem diligenter faciēbat dēscriptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrimentō, si in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scripsit.  
10 Tum paucis post diēbus, rē bene cōflectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōspectus est, qui Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebris certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōfēstim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvi ad lītus appulsā, lēgātus scilicet amicōs adesse crēdēbat; quārē ē latebrīs palam prōgressus, in lītore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannīs capitīs damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam adesset, aequissimō animō “Hoc sōlum mē paenitet,” inquit, “quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar.”

- 1. ille: omit in translating. — qui . . . vellet: willing. — veste mūtāta: i.e. in disguise.
- 2. speculandi causā: i.e. as a spy; lit. what?
- 4. magistrī puerōrum: a tutor.
- 6. liberē: adv., freely, or at will.
- 8. dēscriptiōnēs: dēscriptiō, -ōnis, F., (a) drawing (cf. scribō). — commentāriōs: commentārii, -ōrum, M., notes.
- 9. dētrimentō: dat. of service (cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4); translate freely. — vēnisset: cf. factus esset,
- p. 121, l. 19. — Latinē: adv., in Latin.
- 11. trānsitūrus erat: was to cross.
- 18. is: omit in translating. — capitīs damnātus: cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16.
- 19. moriendī: freely, of execution.
- 20. aequissimō: fully composed. — mē paenitet: causes me regret (paenitet, 2, paenituit).
- 21. quod: that. — largiar: subjunctive. For the phrasing of the whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

# STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

## LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

### *Unexpected Trouble*

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut virēs militū cōservāret, exercitū in hiberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrium est; quārē ille iūdicābat 5 aestāte sibi cum hostib⁹ esse dimicandum, reliquōs autem anni mēnsēs in hibernis militēs retinendōs esse. Olim, cum trānsisset in Britanniā multōsque diēs cum incolis eius īinsulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā 10 summam esse frūmenti inopiam. Itaque exercitū in partēs complūrēs divisum in diversīs civitātibus hiemandi causā collocāvit.

1. *cum*: at the time when.—  
aestātem: not aetātem. The acc. may be rendered “throughout.”

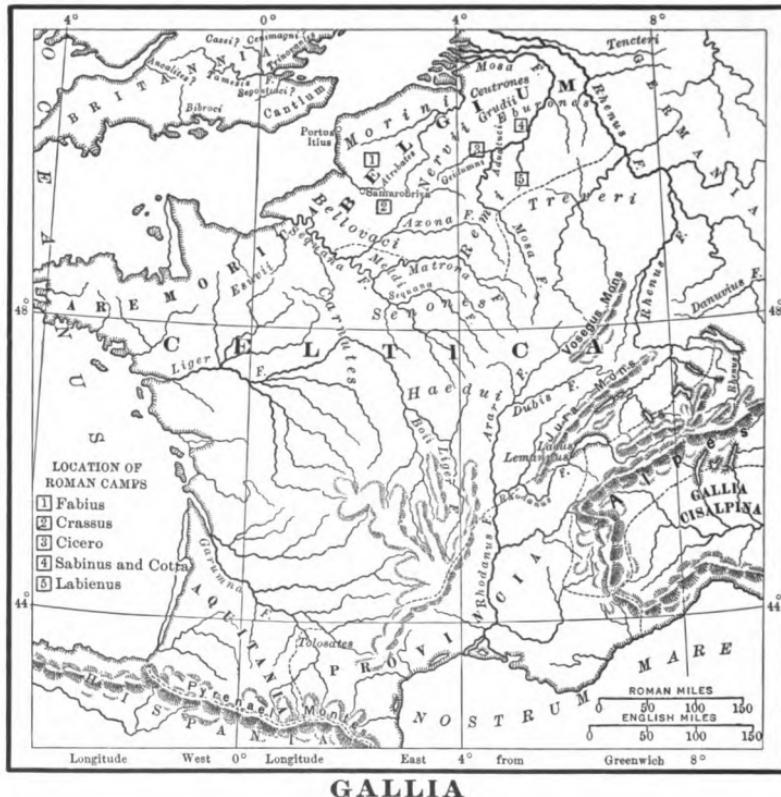
2. *virēs*: do not confuse vis and vir.

3. *dēdūcēbat*: note the tense.  
—caelum: climate.

4. *asperrium*: i.e. as compared with that of Italy.—ille: omit in translating.

6. olim: freely, one year.  
8. aestāte exāctā: freely, at the very end of the season; cf. vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.  
9. siccitātem: siccitās, -ātis, F., drought.

11. divisum: freely, after dividing, etc.; lit. what? — in . . . collocāvit: quartered upon. — diversia civitātibus: the tribes of



Quō factō, dux quidam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorix, cum exercitus tot in partēs divisus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēnum facile superāri posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō est adortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostris, 5 quī equitēs hostium cōfēstī in fugam dedērunt. Quā spē dēiectī, Galli clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō audītō, lēgātī qui illis castrīs praeerant, extrā mūnitōnēs nōn dubitāvērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorīge colloquerentur.

## LESSON 102

*A Parley with the Enemy*

Ad colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, 10 et Q. Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō saepe dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorīge ageret.

Eis, cum extrā mūnitōnēs ēgressi essent, rēx cōfirmāvit Gallōs ūniversōs cōnstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hiberna Caesaris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alterī legiōni

Gaul were numerous, and more or less independent of one another. In dividing his force for the winter, it was Caesar's idea, in view of the scanty crops, to distribute more widely than usual among the Gallic tribes the burden of supplying the grain needed by his soldiers.

1. *cum*: causal.

3. *longinqua*: this particular camp (No. 4 on the map) was distant about two hundred miles from Caesar's headquarters at Samarobriva.

4. *nostris*: the story being told from the point of view of the Romans.

5. *quā spē*: the same construction as with *dēsistō* (e.g. p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. *castrīs*: for syntax, cf. p. 58, l. 12.

8. *eōs*: *men*.

9. C. : *i.e.* Cāius (*Gaius*).—*eques Rōmānus*: a *Roman knight*, *i.e.* a member of the middle order in the Roman state.

10. Q. : *i.e.* Quintus.

12. *rēx*: *i.e.* Ambiorix.

13. *ūniversōs*: freely, *generally*; lit. what?

14. *nē qua*: *so that no*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.—*legiō*: *legion* (a body of about

subsidiō venire posset; sē tamen invītum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntāti cēterōrum Gallōrum cīvitātem suam resistere nōn potuisse. "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hor-  
5 tor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hiberna dēdūcātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitūdini nūllō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salūti vestrae statim cōnsulite." Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per finis suōs incolumēs  
10 iter facere passūrum.

Quā ūratiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorīx; nūntiī autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbis certiōrēs fēcērunt.

## LESSON 103

*Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp*

Q. Sabinus et L. Cotta lēgāti, rē repentinā permōti, ea  
15 verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn neglegenda esse existimābant; itaque, cōnsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūni centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. subsidiō: dat. of service.  
2. voluntāti: voluntās, -ātis, F., wish; for syntax, see the Vocab. under resistō.

3. in mē (acc.): to me.  
4. immemor (-oris, adj.): un-mindful.

5. vestrum: vester, -tra, -trum, your.

7. trānsiit: has crossed.

12. lēgātōs: the commanders.

14. L.: i.e. Lūcius. — lēgāti: cf. 1. 12.

15. neglegenda: neglegō, 3, neglēxi, neglēctus, disregard, or ignore.

16. cōnsiliō: council of war.

17. factū: supine, to do.—es-set: subj. in indirect question.

18. tribūni (sc. militum):

dum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdicābant; cum enim castra mūnitissima essent, crēdēbant sē Germānīs facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōni-  
bus subsidiō veniret. Sabinus autem, veritus nē Gallī cum  
5 Germānīs sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit; sciēbat enim Germānīs magnō dolōrī fuisse victōriās superiōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, qui tot contumēliās ā Rōmānīs accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvis coniungere dubitātūrōs.

10. Ḏrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta sententiae collēgæ sui āriter resisteret, Sabinus postrēmō irātus “Fiat,” inquit, “ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, qui mortis periculō magnopere terrear.”

## LESSON 104

*The Advice of the Enemy is Taken*

Quibus verbis commōtī, omnēs statim ē cōnsiliō surrēxē-  
15 runt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortātī sunt nē suā pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēducērent: neque enim ullum

(military) tribunes. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander. — centuriōnēs: centurions (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

- 3. legiōnibus: troops.
- 6. dolōrī: dat. of service. — superiōrēs: as on p. 79, l. 7.
- 8. ā: at the hands of. — sē: obj. of coniungere, l. 9. — hoste: sc. Rōmānōrum. — quōvis: from quivis.
- 10. in utramque partem: freely, pro and con. — cum . . . resistēret: translate by a partic. phrase. —

sententiae: for syntax, cf. Germānīs, l. 3.

11. collēgæ: collēga, -ae, M., lit. colleague; here, brother officer (namely, Sabinus).

12. fiat: let it be. — ut . . . vidētur: as (it) seems best. — is . . . qui: cf. eōs . . . qui, p. 125, l. 8.

16. rem: matters. — neque: in combination with enim and other postpositive words, neque usually replaces nōn. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with nullum (= nullum).

hostem sibi timendum esse, si modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spēm.

Cum iam ad median noctem disputātum esset, tum dē-  
5 mū Sabīnī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum  
īrī militibus prōnūntiātum est. Cōnsūmpta est vigiliis re-  
liqua pars noctis, cum militēs bona colligerent sua, nec  
satis scīrent quid in hibernis relinquendum, aut quid sēcum  
portandum esset. Deinde primā lūce ē castris longissimō  
agmine maximīsque impedimentis profectī sunt; plēriū  
10 enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorīgē omnia ea, quae dē  
Germānōrum adventū dixerat, mentītum esse, cum spērāret  
ita sē Rōmānōs ex hibernis ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, qui ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant  
lēgātōs cōnstituisse cōnfēstī castra movēre, in silvās  
15 paulum sē recēperant īsidiīsque locō idōneō collocātis  
adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

## LESSON 105

### *The Romans are Ambushed*

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum  
in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Galli subitō ē latebris

1. **timendum esse**: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (*dixērunt*) implied in *hortāti sunt*, p. 127,  
l. 15.—**modo**: consult the Vocab. under *sī*.—**idem probārent**: *i.e.* *should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. **dissēnsiōne**: *dissēnsiō*, -ōnis, *F.*, *disagreement*.

4. **mōtum īrī**: what part of the verb?

5. **vigiliis**: we would say “*in wakefulness*.” What is another meaning of this word?

6. **colligerent**: *colligō*, 3, -lēgi, -lēctus, *get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. **relinquendum**: sc. *esset*; for mood, cf. *esset*, p. 126, l. 17.—**aut**: we would say “and.”

8. **longissimō**: and, therefore, *straggling*.

11. **cum spērāret**: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

ērumperent, atque iniquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committerētur. Sabīnus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat, acerrimō hostiū impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta vērō, qui cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hibernīs nōn discēdendum esse, virum magnum interim sē praebebāt; omnibus enim modis commūni cōsulēbat salūti, ac fortissimē officia et imperātōris et militis simul praestabāt.

10 Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile prōvidēri poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgāti suīs imperāvērunt ut, impedimentis relictīs, in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsilium (etsi eōdem imperātōrēs summī in eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēlīciter accidit; nam 15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedimenta ā Rōmānīs reicta esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dimicāvērunt.

1. nostrīs: dat. case; construe with iniquissimō.—committētur: note the termination, which indicates the case of prōfūlum.

3. acerrimō: translate the superlative "exceedingly."

4. cohortēs: ten cohorts constituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14, note).

5. haec: neut. — ob eamque causam: the prep. ob does not combine with -que, which is, therefore, passed on to the following word.

7. virum magnum: pred. acc. — praebebāt: praebebō, 2, -ui, -itus, show.

8. commūni . . . salūti : for syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8.—et . . . et: correlative.

9. militis: a soldier (*in the ranks*).

10. longitūdinem: longitūdō, -inis, F., extent (cf. longus).

11. prōvidēri: note the last letter of the word.—quōque: from quisque. — faciendum: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 1.

12. in orbem: i.e. so as to form a circle.

13. eōdem: referring to cōsilium.

14. modi: sort.

16. etiam ācrius: (*all the) more* fiercely.

## LESSON 106

*The Enemy Prevail*

Accēdēbat ut militēs multī ab sīgnis discēderent et bona sua cārissima ab impedimentis arripere cōnārentur : cēterī autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritāte fugiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad aciem sē recipere cooperat, tum Galli, undique coorti, nostrōs ācērrimē premēbant.

Cum sic ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritatis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subsidiō venit, est interfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum militēs hōrtārētūr, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabinus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretē suum

1. accēdēbat: impersonal use, *it was added (that) ; freely, matters were made worse by the fact (that).*  
— ab signis: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. ab: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase ā tergō.—cadēbat: note the tense.

7. propius: absol. compar.

8. excesserat: excēdō, 3, -cessi,

-cessum est, *move out.* — orbe: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem: *i.e.* orbem. — coorti: freely, *closing in.*

12. hōram octāvam: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T.: *i.e.* Titus.

15. circumventō: translate by a relative clause.

16. fundā: funda, -ae, f., *sling;* see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs: reflexive to Ambiorīgem. — interpretē: *interpretes, -etis, C., interpreter.*

Cn. Pompēium ad eum mīsit rogātūm, ut sibi militib⁹sque parceret.

## LESSON 107

*Annihilation of the Roman Force*

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānīs timendum esse, sēque Sabīnī ipsiū salūtem praestāre, si ille ad colloquium venire vellet.  
 5 Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātūm hostem sē itūrum, atque in eō persevērāvit. Sabīnus autem tribūnōs militū centuriōnēsque qui adstābant sē sequī iussit; cumque propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abi-  
 cere, pāruit, ac suis ut idem facerent imperāvit. Dum  
 10 autem ibi dē condicōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabīnus paulā-  
 tim circumventus ā Gallis occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātūm, impetūque in nostrōs factō ūrdinēs perturbāvērunt. Ibi L. Cotta pu-  
 gnāns periit cum maximā parte militū. Reliquī sē in  
 15 hiberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressi. Ē quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum viriū, cum cō-  
 fertissimā multitūdine hostiū premerētur, aquilam intrā-  
 vallūm prōiēcit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns inter-  
 fectus est.

20 Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnatiōnēm sustinuērunt;

1. Cn.: i.e. Cnaeus (*Gnaeus*).—  
 rogātūm : cf. petītūm, p. 95, l. 13.

4. vellet : cf. the note on ad-  
 moveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. eō : (neut.) noun.

8. propius : with the force of  
 a prep., *quite near to*.

9. idem : note the gender.

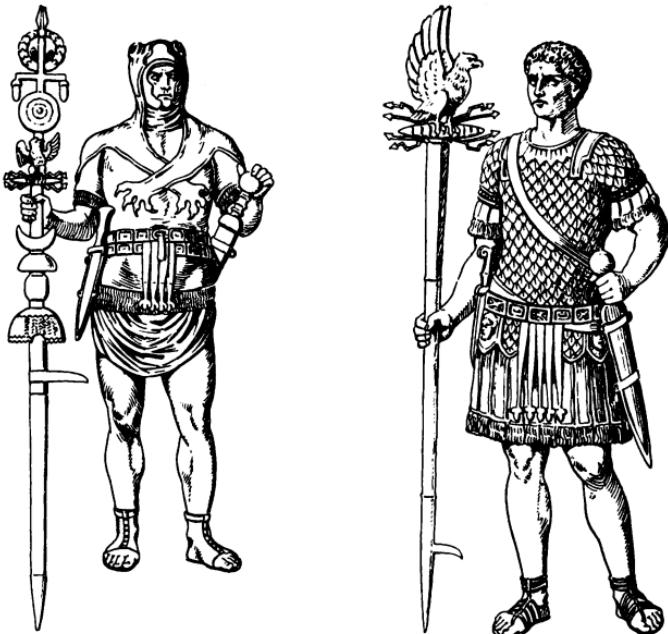
14. cum : i.e. ūnā cum.

16. aquilifer (-erī, M.) : stand-

ard bearer, lit. eagle bearer.—  
 Aside from the standards of the cohorts, each legion carried a silver eagle.—virium : from what nom. sing.? Give some of the meanings of the singular.

17. aquilam : aquila, -ae, F.,  
 eagle.

18. ipse : autem may be sup-  
 plied.



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

tum, dēspérātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsi interfēcērunt. Pauci, qui paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertis itineribus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna pervēnērunt, atque eum dē rēbus gestis fēcērunt certiōrem.

## LESSON 108

*The Gauls attack a Second Camp*

5 Hāc victoriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, profectus est; neque noctem neque diem intermisit, peditātumque sē iussit subsequī.  
 Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucisque concitātis, posterō diē in  
 10 Nerviōs pervēnit, eōsque hortātus est, nē sui in perpetuum liberandī occāsiōnem dīmitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duo Rōmānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse docuit; facillimēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum Q. Cicerōne in fīnibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā ōrātiōne  
 15 facile Nerviīs persuāsit.

1. dēspérātā: dēspérō, I, *despair of*. — sē ipsi: cf. ipse . . . sē, p. 8, l. 2. The men probably ran upon one another's swords.

3. ad T. Labiēnum: in connection with in hiberna, this phrase may conveniently be rendered by a genitive. For the location of Labiēnus' camp, see the map on p. 124.

4. gestis: lit. *done*; translate freely, using a relative clause.

5. sublātus: from tollō. — in: *into the territory of*.

6. Aduātucōs: for this and other peoples mentioned, see again the map on p. 124.

7. intermisit: sc. cursum, *i.e.*

*drew rein.* — sē: omit in translation.

9. concitātis: concitō, I, *stir up*.  
 10. sui: gen. pl.

11. liberandī: gerundive, taking its form from sui. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. facillimēque: as governing verb for this clause, *dixit* may be supplied.

14. Q. Cicerōne: another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map). — eōrum: *i.e.* Nerviōrum. — hiemāret: for mood, cf. *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

15. Nerviīs persuāsit: *won over the Nervii*; lit. what?

Itaque cōfēstīm dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsque aliās, ut quam maximis cōpiis auxiliō statim venīrent, repente ad Cicerōnis hiberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūlli militēs, morte Sabini Cottaeque nōndum sū nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnitiōnēs officiis variis operam dabant. Ex his quīdam, qui lignātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentinō equitum adventū intercepti sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma, vāllumque cōscendērunt.

## LESSON 109

*The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar*

10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōfēstīm ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessīs autem omnibus viīs, ab hostib⁹ missī intercepti sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā compor-tāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incrēdibilī celeritatē exstrūxērunt.

15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiis, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps diēbus factum est. Nulla pars noctis labōribus mīlitum carēbat: nōn aegrīs, nōn vulneratīs

2. aliās: not reliquās or cēte-rās. — ut: the construction is determined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the sending of messengers. — maximis cō-piis: abl. case; translate “with.”

3. ad: *in the neighborhood of.*

6. lignātiōnis causā: cf. p.

108, l. 8.

7. equitum: *i.e.* of the enemy.

9. cōscendērunt: *manned.*

11. missī: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. noctū: *during the (follow-ing) night.* — māteriā: māteria,-ae, F., *timber.*

17. quā: freely, *as;* strictly, abl., in the same construction as eādem ratiōne.

18. reliquīs: *the following.* — deinceps: adv., *in turn.*

19. labōribus mīlitum: freely, *toil for the soldiers.* — carēbat: *was without, or lacked;* cf. the note on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsī tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbātur, priusquam mīlitum vōcibus sibi parcere coāctus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī\* sēsē velle nūntiāvērunt. Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante Ambiorīx cum Sabinō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabini morte, et cōfirmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hiberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem Rōmānī licēre incolumibus ex castrīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficisci.

## LESSON 110

*Heroic Defense of their Camp*

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallis respondit nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmāni ullam accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armis discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spērāre sē eōs, quae petīsset, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis: quiēs, -ētis, F., rest. — tenuissimā: tenuis, -is, -e, slight; here, poor.

2. valētūdine: cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. causam: i.e. ground.

6. potestāte: i.e. facultāte. — commemorant: i.e. dīcunt. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. cum Sabinō ēgerat: had treated (in his dealings) with Sabinus.

9. hanc . . . cōnsuētūdinem: i.e. the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — inveterāscere: inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvī, become fixed.

10. incolumibus: pred. dat. — quāscumque: quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whatsoever.

14. ullam: modifier of condiciōnem.

15. lēgātōs: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. quae: i.e. ea quae, lit. the things which; freely, the concessions which. — petīsset: i.e. petīvissent; cf. also the note on exspectāsset, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nerviī vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna circumdant. Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsuī sunt; gladiis igitur caespitēs circumcidere et manibus sagīsque 5 terram exhaūrire cōgēbāntur. Quā ex rē hominū multitudō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōris ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnītiōnēm pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs 10 tēla ferrefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitudine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Gallī, victoriā ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vāllum scālis ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum 15 maximā tēlōrum multitudine premerentur, suaque impedimenta omnia ignī cōnsūmī intellegerent, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. hāc spē dēiectī: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. circumdant: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — eīs: i.e. Nerviī.

3. ferramentōrum: ferramentum, -ī, N., iron implement.— eam: such.— rem: business.— ūsuī sunt: are needed.

4. circumcidere: circumcidō, 3, -cidi, -cisus, cut out, lit. cut around.

5. exhaūrire: exhaūriō, 4, -hausi, -haustus, remove, lit. haul out.

7. pedum quīndecim: freely, fifteen-foot (including both vāllum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. ferrefacta: ferrefactus, -a, -um, red-hot.— casās: barracks.— quae: feminine.

11. ventī: gen. case. — magnitudine: abl. of cause (magnitūdō, -inis, F., force, lit. greatness; cf. magnus); translate "by reason of."

12. distulērunt: sc. eum (i.e. ignem).

13. vāllum: i.e. castrōrum; not the vāllum of l. 1. — scālis: scālae, -ārum, F., ladder(s).

14. cum: concessive.

15. maximā . . . multitudine: freely, a perfect storm.

16. dē vāllō: i.e. from (his position upon) the rampart.— dēcēderet: dēcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, withdraw.

17. nostrīs: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium interiret aut vulnerārētur.

## LESSON III

*A Messenger eludes the Enemy*

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn 5 nulli, in cōspectū nostrōrum militum intercepti, cum cruciātū necāti sunt. Intrā hiberna autem erat Nervius quidam, nōmine Verticō, qui ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum prīmum castra oppugnāta sunt. Hic servō spē libertatis magnisque persuāsit praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dē- 10 ferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem in columnis pervēnit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā ferē ūndecimā diēi, nūntium cōfēstīm in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius 15 hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātūm mittit, qui ei

1. *ut*: *that*. — *eō diē*: *i.e.* with; lit. what? — *sine*: without (*exciting*).

2. *periculis*: translate as sing.

3. *hōrā . . . ūndecimā diēi*: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

4. *mittit*: cf. *commemorant*, p. 133, l. 5. — *ad M. Crassum*: see the map on p. 124.

5. *eō*: *i.e.* *Caesare*.

6. *iubet*: sc. *eum* (*i.e.* *Crassum*). — *ad*: to (*join*).

7. *alterum*: sc. *nūntium*. — *ad C. Fabium*: see the map again.

8. *sc. suō* (*i.e.* “of his”); dat. case, to be construed with *persuāsit*, l. 9.

9. *ille*: the slave. — *Gallus*: (*since he was*) a Gaul. — *inter . . . versātus*: freely, mixing

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per finēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō ut, si rei pūblicae commodō fierī possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae 5 paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximis hibernīs cōgit.

## LESSON 112

*Caesar heads a Relief Force*

Hōrā ferē tertīā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē milia passuum viginti prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiōnemque ei trādidit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat. Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabīni et clāde 15 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernīs fugae similem pro-

1. legiōnem: sc. suam.—in Atrebatēs: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection, scribit implies **imperat** also; hence the *ut*-clause.

3. rei pūblicae commodō: lit. *with the well-being of the commonwealth*; freely, *without endangering the public weal*.—possit: *it may*.—legiōne: sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertīā: *i.e.* of the day following.—antecursōribus: *antecursor, -oris, M., courier*.

9. praeposuit: with dat., *left in charge (of)*.

11. civitātum: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. “from.”—litterās: *documents*.

12. eō: the adv.

13. imperātum erat: note the gender.

14. occurrit: sc. eī (*i.e. Caesarī*).

15. cohortium: *freely, to the cohorts*.—cum: causal.—ad . . . vēnissent: *had marched upon*.—Trēverōrum: see the map on p. 124.

16. fugae: dat. case; construe with similem.

fectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetus sustinērī nōn posset, litterās Caesari remīsit, quibus ostendit quantum esset periculum docuitque omnēs peditatūs equitatūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria milia passuum ab suis castris cōnsedisse.

5 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, omnem tamen commūnis salūtis spem in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit igitur magnis itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivis cōgnōscit quae in Cicerōnis hibernis gerantur, quantōque in periculō rēs sit.

## LESSON 113

*The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach*

10 Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallis Caesar magnis praemiis persuāsit, ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferret. Hanc Graecis litteris scriptam mīsit, nē Gallō interceptō nostra cōnsilia ab hostibus cōgnōserentur. Hominī imperāvit ut, si hiberna intrāre nōn posset, trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitōnēs abiceret. In epistulā scripsit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; Cicerōnem hortātus est ut pr̄istinam virtūtem retinēret.

1. fēcisset: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

2. quibus: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — esset: why subjunctive?

4. Trēverōrum: belonging to the Treveri. — suis: his.

5. opiniōne: opiniō, -ōnis, F., expectation; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. redierat: i.e. had been reduced.

7. venit: what tense? (note the ē). — magnis itineribus: i.e. forced marches.

8. captivis: i.e. Gauls whom

he had arrested as he marched. — quae: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (quid).

10. ex: of. — Gallis: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on legiō, p. 125, l. 14).

11. epistulam: epistula, -ae, F., letter.

12. Gallō interceptō: translate by a conditional clause.

15. āmentum: āmentum, -ī, N., strap. — dēligātā: dēligō, I., fasten.

16. adfore: i.e. adfutūrum esse.



ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*amentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

Gallus, cum ad hiberna vénisset, periculum veritus, ut erat imperatum, trágulam cum litteris mittit. Haec cásū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostris statim animadversa, tertio diē ā milite quōdam cōspicitur; qui eam sine morā 5 ad Cicerōnem dēfert. Ille, epistulā perlēctā, militēs laetus docet Caesarem iam subsidiō venire. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

## LESSON 114

*The Enemy raise the Siege*

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explorātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, 10 ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Quō animadversō, Cicerō Gallum quendam celeriter cum litterīs mittit, in quibus scribit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitūdinem ad Caesarem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter media nocte adlātis, Caesar suōs facit certiorēs, eōsque ad pugnandum animō cōfirmat. 15

Posterō diē, cum luce primā mōvisset castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

1. **periculum**: *i.e.* of trying to enter the camp.

2. **litteris**: *i.e.* epistulā. — **cásū**: *i.e.* forte.

3. **ad . . . adhaesit**: freely, *caught upon*.

6. **tum**: *later*. — **fūmī**: translate as singular.

7. **cernēbantur**: cf. the rendering of *vidēbant*, p. 36, l. 7. —

quae rēs: cf. *quae urbs*, p. 44, l. 13. —

**omnem**: *any*. — **dubitatiōnem**: *dubitatiō*, *-ōnis*, *F.*, *doubt*.

9. **rē**: *the situation*. — **per**: freely, *from*; lit. *through*.

10. **ad**: *against*. — **omnibus cōpiis**: cum may be supplied with this abl.

12. **omnem . . . multitūdinem**: sc. *suam*. The whole is obj. of *convertisse*.

14. **pugnandum**: gerund.

15. **animō**: lit. *in mind*. — **cōfirmat**: *fortifies*. Render freely.

16. **mōvisset**: subject, *Caesar*.

17. **magnam**: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitudinem vīdit. Erat magni periculi rēs cum tantis cōpiis iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum existimābat: quārē cōnsēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnīvit.

## LESSON 115

*They are Outgeneraled by Caesar*

Postridie hostium equitātus prīmā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commīsit. Caesar autem suīs imperāvit ut cēderent cōsultō sēque in castra recipērent; simul ex omnībus partībus castra altiōre vällō munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invītati, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt omnīs, aciemque iniquō locō cōnstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnībus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

vallem and rīvum, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter*. — cōpiis: sc. Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore*.

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl. "from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum: freely, *he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. quam aequissimō locō poterat: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how *quam* and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — mūnīvit: cf. the part. mīnītus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vällō: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxi, -strūctus, *block up*. — simulātiōne timōris: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. invītati: invītātus, -a, -um, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — rīvum trādūxērunt: i.e. dūxērunt trāns rīvum; cf. flūmen trāductis, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnīs: modifier of cōpiās.

14. omnībus portīs: for syntax, cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem insequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Turrēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admirātur. Legiōne prōductā, 5 cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in periculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne militibusque laudātis, centuriōnēs tribū-nōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabini et Cot-  
io tae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.

## LESSON 116

*Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter*

Dum haec fiunt, ad Labiēnum incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quīn etiam, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum Labiēnus abasset circiter sexā-gintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar 15 pervēnisset, ante medium noctem subitō ad portās Labiēni castrōrum auditus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. longius: absol. compar.
2. intercēdēbant: intercēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, intervene.— omnibus suis incolumibus: abl. absol.; translate "with."
4. hostium: freely, built by the enemy.
5. nōn decimum, etc.: order of lit. translation: nōn quemque decimum militem esse reliquum.

7. fuerit: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.

8. ēgregiam: pred. adj. (ēgre-gius, -a, -um, conspicuous).

9. testimōniō: testimōnium, -ī, N., report. The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."
10. certius: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under cōgnōscō.

11. haec: this. — Labiēnum: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.  
 12. fāma (-ae, F.): report.— dēfertur: i.e. by natives. — cum: concessive.

15. ad: before.  
 16. eōrum: of those. — clāmor: translate as pl. — grātulārī: grā-tulor, I, offer congratulation.

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēverī, qui posterō diē hīberna Labiēnī oppugnārē cōstituerant, repentīnā rē perterritī noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postridiē Caesar cōtiōne habitā militēs cōfirmāvit, 5 eōsque docuit dētrimentum, quod temeritātē lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remisit in hīberna; 10 ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam hiemāre cōstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōtiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritātē: translate the abl. "through." — lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabini. — esset acceptum: for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e.* should be taken the more philosophically; lit. what?

7. immortālium: immortālis, -is, -e, immortal. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men. — eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtinus, -a, -um, long-continued. — gaudium (-i, N.): exultation (cf. gaudeō).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

### LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

#### *Caesar lands a Force in Africa*

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Africam trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longīs nāvibus exspectābat; qui autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitudinem veritus, appulsā ad proximum litus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticam praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur; triduique iter prōgressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnum Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitatū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, qui locus peridōneus castrīs exīstīmābātur.

1. C. Cūriō: one of Caesar's generals.—D.: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. L. Caesar: an officer in Pompey's navy.

3. veritus: *appalled at*.—trirēme: sc. suā (trirēmis, -is, F., *galley*).—pedibus: we would say "on foot"; cf. manibus genibusque, p. 59, l. 8.—Hadrūmētum: consult the map on p. 146; for

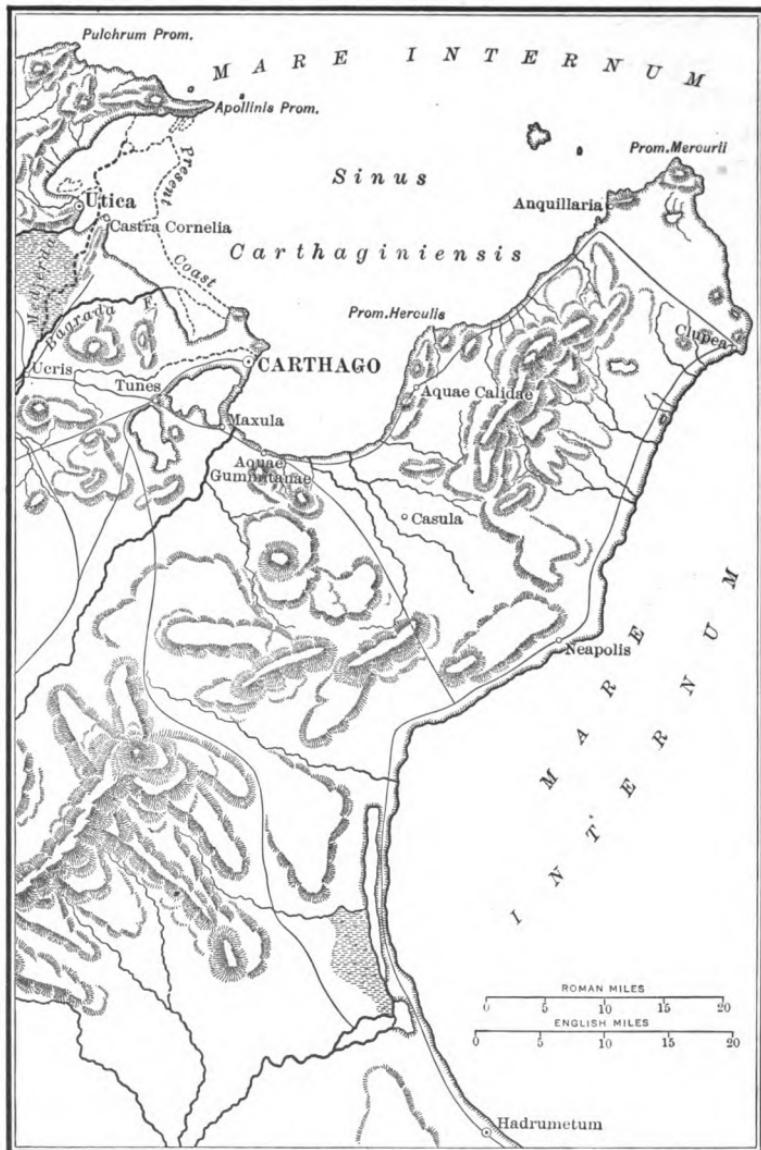
syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

4. quō: the adv.—fugā: *defection*.

5. Uticam: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

6. proficiscitur: from Anquillaria.

7. antecēdit: antecēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead*.—qui locus: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l. 13.—peridō-



THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explōrātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnitiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimis viīs undique portārī agīque multa, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agris in urbem cōferēbantur, equitātum mīsit, 5 ut praedā īspērātā potirētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissi sunt DC equitēs Numidae, qui agricolis fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō pīmum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectis circiter CXX reliquī sē in urbem contulērunt.

## LESSON 118

*Operations about Utica*

10 Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriis, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, qui nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvis trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, 15 sine morā sublātis ancoris omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitūm nostrūm complēvit.

**neus** (-a, -um) : *particularly suitable*; cf. the note on *perpaucōs*, p. 25, l. 10.

2. **plēnissimis**: *plēnus*, -a, -um, *congested*. — *viīs* : translate the abl. "along"; cf. *sēmitā*, p. 103, l. 17.

3. **portārī agīque** : cf. the note on *rapere et agere*, p. 49, l. 8.

4. **timōre** : freely, *in the panic*; strictly, abl. of cause.

5. **īspērātā** : *īspērātus*, -a, -um, *unexpected*.

6. **Numidae** : with adj. force.

7. **neque** : cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. **Mārcius** : see p. 145, l. 8.

11. **prōnūntiārī** : cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. **numerō** : for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — *in hostium locō habitūrum* : *would regard as enemies*; lit. what?

13. **omnēs** : masc.

14. **nāvis** : *i.e.* the *onerāiae* of l. 11. — *trādūxissent* : *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — *prōnūntiātiōne* : *prōnūntiātiō*, -ōnis, *F.*, *announcement*.

16. **quō** : the adv.

His rēbus gestis, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā 5 rēge Iubā missa Uticam venire; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbatur, et temporis pūnctō primum agmen erat in cōspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, qui prīmum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus, aciem īstruit.

## LESSON 119

*Curio gains an Initial Advantage*

- 10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commisērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nūllō ōrdine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per lītus in oppidum prope-rāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.  
 15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suīs duōbus et vigintī ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt; cui cōfirmant tōtius exercitūs animōs alienōs esse

1. ad Bagradam: cf. p. 145,  
 1. 10. In connection with *in castra*,  
 translate "at the Bagrada"; cf.  
*ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hiberna,*  
*p. 133, l. 3.*

3. opere: *i.e. construction.*

4. statiōne: *statiō, -ōnis, F.,*  
*outpost.—auxilia: auxiliary forces.*

5. Iubā: king of Numidia,  
 friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147,  
 1. 5 ff.). — *venire: i.e. appropi-*  
*quāre ad.* — *eōdem . . . tempore:*  
*i.e. simul.*

6. cernēbātur: cf. *cernēbantur*,  
*p. 141, l. 7.* — *temporis pūnctō: in*

*a moment (pūnctum, -ī, n., point).*  
 — *prīmum agmen: vanguard;* lit.  
 what?

9. *opere: (the work of) con-*  
*struction* (cf. l. 3).

11. *legiōnēs: sc. Cūriōnis.*

12. *sine metū: evidently they*  
*had not heard of Curio's arrival in*  
*Africa.*

13. *oppidum: i.e. Utica.*

16. *Attium Vārum: com-*  
*mander of the Pompeian forces*  
*at Utica.*

17. *alienōs . . . ā: freely, dis-*  
*affected toward.*

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs.  
 Qua ḍrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex  
 castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque ūnā valle nōn  
 magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās īstruit.

5 Erat in exercitū Vāri lēgātus quidam, cui nōtī erant  
 multī Cūriōnis mīlitēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis cau-  
 sam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit,  
 ut Vārum sequerentur; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est,  
 sī quī ad eum trānsire voluissent. His verbīs auditis, nūllam  
 10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significātiō, atque ita suās  
 uterque cōpiās redūcit.

## LESSON 120

*He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar*

At in castrīs Cūriōnis animī omnium solliciti erant; quis-  
 que enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid sui timōris  
 addēbat.

15 Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant  
 quī castra Vāri statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alteri autem

1. facultāte datā: translate as a  
 conditional clause. — esse trānsi-  
 tūrōs: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. castrīs: built just outside  
 the city walls. — ēdūcit: ēdūcō, 3,  
 -dūxi, -ductus, *lead out*. — idem:  
 note the gender.

4. uterque: as noun.

6. appellātiōnis: appellātiō,  
 -ōnis, F., *accosting*; translate here  
*accosting (them)*. — causam: freely,  
*excuse (for)*.

8. Vārum sequerentur: *i.e. join*  
*the army of Varus*.

9. sī quī: *if any* (noun); cf.  
 the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1. —

eum: *i.e. Vārum*. — voluissent:  
 freely, *were willing*; cf. *esset per-  
 ruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — nūllam in  
 partem: see the *Vocab.* under *par-*

10. significātiō (-ōnis, F.): *sign*.  
 — ita: *i.e. with the loyalty of Cu-  
 rīo's troops still a matter of doubt*.

12. solliciti: sollicitus, -a, -um,  
*unsettled*. — quisque: noun.

13. ad id, quod: freely, *to what*.  
 — sui: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6; for  
 syntax of the gen. phrase, cf.  
*glōriae*, p. 107, l. 17.

16. cēnsērent: cf. the note on  
*erant qui*, p. 109, l. 5. — alteri:  
*i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen "Neutrum 5 cōnsilium," inquit, "probō; neque enim tanti sum animi, ut castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tanti timōris, ut spem statim dīmittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror."

Quārē, dīmissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum; 10 quōrum animōs verbis cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarīque fidēlēs sint. Quā ūrātiōne permōti militēs eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdētēm vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque 15 experiri.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar.—mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling, lit. mind.*

3. sānārentur: sānō, I., *heal, pass., become normal.* — simul: i.e. furthermore.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15.—neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: i.e. before giving up hope.—experienda: *experior, 4, expertus sum, try.*

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly.* — advocat: *advocō, I., call together.*

10. verbis: sc. suis. — quid . . . causae: *what grounds;* for syntax

of the gen., cf. *suī timōris*, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be;* translate the clause freely.

12. eum: i.e. Cūriōnem. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses.—interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, I.). — discēdētēm: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting.* — ūniversī: *freely, one and all.* — magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2.—nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + que).

14. fidem: *loyalty;* cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experiri: *make trial of;* cf. l. 7.

## LESSON 121

*The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse*

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōnstituit, cum p̄imū  
esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postridiēque  
militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōnstiterant, in aciē  
collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prō-  
dūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dīmicandī facultātem  
dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est,  
nōn ita magna, at diffīlē et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque  
sī adverſāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, exspectābat,  
quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō  
Vāri equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō  
equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum p̄imū impetum  
equitēs hostiū nō ferunt, sed admissis equīs ad suōs re-  
fugiunt.

15 Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequī iubet Cūriō, et  
omnibus cum cōpiīs in vallem cōfēstīm dēscendit; in-  
terim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenirentur,  
terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritātē sē in castra  
recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: *i.e. should present itself.* — dīmicandi: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: *so very.* — arduō: ar-  
duus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū:  
ascēnsus, -ūs, M., slope. — hanc:  
object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque:  
each (*commander*).

9. sī: *in the hope that.* — ad-  
verſāriōrum: adverſāriii, -īrum, M.,  
*the opposing party.* — exspectābat:  
cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101,  
l. 14.

13. hostiū: *i.e. Varus' party.*  
— admissis: admissus, -a, -um,  
part., *let go, i.e. at full speed.*

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf.  
l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on  
p. 149, l. 3.

## LESSON 122

*Narrow Escape of their Commander*

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, miles quidam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius militibus et velle aliquid dicere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōstituit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaeſivit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille periculum sublātō scūtō vītāvit; Fabius autem ā prōximis militibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitūdine portae castrōrum complētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impeditum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interirent; nōnnūlli vērō erant adeō perterriti, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contendarent. At Cūriōnis mīlitēs, ad proelium ēgressi, sēcum nūllam cōpiam portāvērant eārum rērum, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsui. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra redūcīt.

Cuius discessū vulnerāti ē castris hostium in oppidum redūcuntur; quō quidem tempore multi praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

- 1. in: *during*.
- 2. fugientium: sc. hostium.
- 3. cōsecūtus: *followed*.
- 4. saepius: *absol. compar.*
- 5. aut: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 7.
- 6. apertum: *unprotected*, i.e. the right.—ille: Varus.
- 7. scūtō: scūtum, -i, N., *shield*.
- 8. iter: *roadway*.
- 9. sine vulnere: i.e. wound inflicted by the enemy.
- 10. adeō: the adv.—eōdem cursū: i.e. *without stopping*.
- 11. cōsecūtus: *followed*.
- 12. cōsecūtus: *followed*.
- 13. castra: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3.—ipsum: *proper*.
- 14. proelium: *a battle (in the open)*.—ēgressi: sc. ex castris; translate the part. by a relative clause.
- 15. tum: *for the time being*.
- 16. discessū: abl. of time when; translate “on.”
- 17. quidem: omit in translating.—per: *freely, under*.
- 18. eōdem: *adv., to the same shelter*.



SCUTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūsque timōre cōgnitō, Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculisque paucis in castris ad speciem relictis, tertīā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitū silentiō in oppidum redūcit.

## LESSON 123

*King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus*

5 Postridiē eius diēi Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. Sed iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum adesse magnis cum cōpiis dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiōne urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī. Ille tamen primō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstīmābat; 10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā minus quinque et viginti mīlia passuum abesse, relictis mūnītiōni bus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comportāre coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī erant.

Dum haec fīunt, ex oppidānīs perfugīs audīvit Iubam 15 aliō bellō esse revocātū, et Saburram, eius praefectū, parvīs cum cōpiis Uticae appropinquāre. Quō auditō, cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere cō-

2. būcinātōre: būcinātor, -ōris, M., *trumpeter*. — ad speciem: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. eius diēi: omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the diē which enters into the composition of postridiē.

6. Iubā: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. haec eadem: neut.; translate as singular.

10. minus: *less (than)*; cf. the use of amplius, p. 101, l. 3.

12. Castra Cornēlia: see again the map on p. 146.

13. omnia: *all sorts of things*. — obsidiōnem: of the same derivation as the verb obsidēre, l. 5.

14. perfugīs: with adj. force, *deserting*.

15. aliō bellō: abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements was deliberately fabricated, the "desertions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; qui hostis necopīnantēs adortus, magnum eōrum numerum occidit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem equitēs redeunt captivōsque ad eum redūcunt.

## LESSON 124

*The Numidians resort to Strategy*

5 Cūriō, cohortibus quinque castris praesidiō relictīs, omnibus cum cōpiis quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Qui, victoriā equitātūs cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdēbat longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse  
10 exīstīmābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūn-tiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque  
15 cum reliquīs cōpiis elephantīsque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspicātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim īstrūxit atque eis imperāvit ut simul atque nostri in cōspectum vēnissent, simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēderent.

20 Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

i. *ad*: i.e. to attack.

ii. *falsō*: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

iii. *quelque*: i.e. *qui + que*. — nocturnō proeliō: see l. 1 ff.

iv. *cōfidēbat*: *cōfidō*, 3, -fīsūs sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — subsidiō: dat. of service.

v. *elephantīs*: *elephantus*, -i, M., *elephant*.

vi. *suspicātus*: translate as a present. — ipsum: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — adfore: i.e. ad futūrum esse.

vii. *simul atque*: i.e. cum pri-mum. — vēnissent: cf. the note on exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

viii. *simulātiōne*: translate the abl. "with."

in plānitiem dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgressus, cōflectō iam labōre exercitū, locō iniquō cōstituit. Tum suis signum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat. Peditatū prīmō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem 5 nostram inmittit.

## LESSON 125

*Curio's Army is Annihilated*

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ūrūnēs circumiit militēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent. Hī prīmō fortissimē dimicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam 10 ā tergō adorīrī coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritis omnibus cohortatiōnēs suās nōn audīrī intellēxit, ūnam salūtis esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere atque eō signa ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus.

15 Tum vērō ad summam dēspēratiōnēm nostrī perveniunt, et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum pauciis equitibus circumsistēns, Cūriōnēm ūrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. longius: *absol.* *compar.*  
—inde: *i.e.* from the point where  
he had left the hills.

2. cōflectō: construe with  
exercitū.

4. prīmō: the adv.

8. dimicābant: *kept up the*  
*fight.*

9. circumventam: translate as  
if circumvēnērunt eamque.

10. ā tergō: cf. p. 78, l. 18.—  
omnibus: noun, forming an abl.  
absol. with perterritis.

11. cohortatiōnēs: cohortatiō,  
ōnis, F., *exhortation.*

12. spēm: *chance.* — capere:  
make for; as subject, suōs may  
be supplied.

13. eō: the adv. —signa: see  
the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131,  
l. 16. — hōs: *i.e.* collēs.

15. dēspēratiōnēm: dēspēratiō,  
ōnis, F., *despair.*

18. numquam sē, etc.: the in-  
direct discourse depends upon cō-  
firmat, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōspectum redditūrum cōfirmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

É proeliō equitēs nostrī perpauci effūgērunt; quibuscum nōnnulli, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum 5 morāti erant, fugā tōtius exercitūs procul animadversā, incolumēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs interficti sunt.

4. reficiendōrum: reficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectus, refresh. 6. castra: *i.e.* the camp at Castra Cornēlia.

# SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

## AN EPISODE FROM THE GALlic WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

### LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnis coāctīs peditatūs equitatūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse 5 legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis castrīs ā milibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt.

Labienus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandi facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. **haec**: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. **cum**: translate "and." — **ūnā**: *the one*.

4. **viā**: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — **vēnisse**: *i.e.* to reënforce Labienus.

5. **missū**: missus, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — **cōgnō-**

**scunt**: cf. *commemorant*, p. 135, l. 6. — **ā**: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. **temeritāte**: cf. the adv. *temerē*.

9. **eōrum**: *on their part*. — **dīmicandi**: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — **praesidiō . . . relictō**: abl. absol. — **quīnque cohōrtium**: (*consisting*) of five cohorts.

cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mīle passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficili trānsitū flūmen rīpisque praeruptis. 5 Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstīmabat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germānī ap̄ propinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē p̄imā lūce ca- 10 stra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitātūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicis rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

## LESSON 127

*The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident*

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs mīlitum p̄imīsque ūrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōsiliī, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. *impedimentis*: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.

2. *hostem*: sing. for pl., as in English.—*mīle*: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.

3. *intermissō*: *i.e.* relictō (namely, between him and the enemy).—*commūnit*: cōmūniō, 4, intrench.

4. *trānsitū*: trānsitus, -ūs, M., *passage* (*cf. trānseō*).—*praeruptis*: praeruptus, -a, -um, *rugged*.

7. *spēs*: namely, for the Treveri.—*loquitur*: subject, Labiēnus.—*cōnsiliō*: as on p. 126, l. 16.—*quoniam*: *inasmuch as*.

8. *suās . . . fortūnās*: *i.e.*

*suam salūtem*.—*exercitūsque : and (that) of the army*.

9. *dubium*: *i.e.* periculum; lit. what?—*dēvocātūrum*: *dēvocō*, 1, bring; lit. *call*.—*castra mōtūrum*: *i.e.* he will fall back.

10. *ut*: *inasmuch as*.—*ex out of*.

11. *Gallōrum*: freely, recruited from among the Gauls (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10).—*Gallicis rēbus*: *the Gallic cause*.

13. *ūrdinibus*: *i.e.* centuriōnibus.

14. *quid suī sit cōsiliī*: *what his plan involves*; lit. what? (*for cōsiliī*, cf. *Standisi*, p. 16, l. 4).—*prōpōnit*: *i.e.* ostendit. —*quō*: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspicōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū, quam populi Rōmāni fert cōnsuētūdō, castra movēri iubet. His rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte  
5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortāti inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex manib⁹ dimitterent — longum esse, perterritis Rōmānis, Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam pati dignitātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguum manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgre-  
15 diēbātur.

1. timōris: namely, on his part.

2. fert: *calls for*.

3. similem: pred. adj. — haec: neut.

4. per: freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9. — instantā propinquitāte: freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., *nearness*).

6. agmen novissimum: namely, of Labienus' army. With this phrase cf. primum agmen, p. 148, l. 6. — prōcesserat: prōcēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est: *advance*.

7. inter sē: freely, *one another*.

8. longum esse: *it was needless* (lit. *too long*). The indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying implied in cohortāti, l. 7. Do not attempt to translate this paren-

thesical matter (between the dashes) until the rest of the sentence is clear.

10. ut: *that*; dependent on pati. — tantis cōpiis: see p. 158, l. 1.

11. fugientem atque impeditam: modifying manum, l. 10. — flūmen: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae: neut., *this*. — fore: supplying here a future infinitive for fiō. — ut: depending on prōgrediēbātur, l. 14. — omnēs: *them all*. — citrā: prep., *to the near side of*, i.e. *to his side of*.

14. ūsus: *keeping up*. — itineris: *here, retreat*. — placidē: adv., *steadily*. — prōgrediēbātur: *continued to move on*.

## LESSON 128

*They are Decisively Beaten*

Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulō quōdam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "militēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenu-  
5 merō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; paucīs turmis praesidiō ad impedī-  
mēta dimissī reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostri clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs inmittunt.  
10 Illī ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, infēstis  
signis ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac  
prīmō concursū in fugam coniecti proximās silvās petivērunt.  
Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō inter-  
fectō, complūribus captis, paucīs post diēbus civitātem  
15 recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā  
Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēpērunt.

1. tumulō: *tumulus, -i, m., hillock.*

convertī: *a signal to change front.*

7. dērigī: *i.e. instrui (dērigō,*

*3, -rēxi, -rēctus).*

8. ad: *on.*

2. inquit: *subject, Labiēnus.*  
—militēs: *voc. case.—quam peti-  
stis facultātem: i.e. eam facultātem  
quam petivisti.*

10. praeter: *i.e. contrary to.*

—spem: *expectation.—quōs: sup-  
ply as antecedent, eōs, those (sub-  
ject of ire, l. 11).*

11. ad . . . ire: *freely, advanc-  
ing upon.—ac: freely, but.*

12. concursū: *concurrus, -ūs,  
M., clash (cf. colclīrō).*

13. cōnsecrātus: *cōnsector, I,  
follow up.*

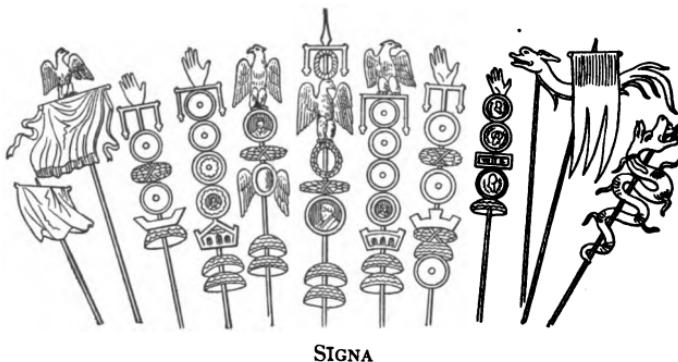
15. recēpit: *sc. in dēditiōnem.*

—perceptā. *i.e. cōgnitā (percipiō,  
3, -cēpi, -ceptus).*

4. nōbīs ducibus: *i.e. mē duce  
(abl. absol.). The use of the first  
person pl. for the corresponding  
sing. is very common. —saepenu-  
merō: *i.e. saepe; strictly, numerō*  
is abl. of specification.*

16. imperātōrī: *freely, before the  
eyes of your commander in chief  
(i.e. Caesar). —haec: this action.*

5. cōram: *adv., in person.—  
cernere: i.e. vidēre.—signa . . .*



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vexilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

## AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvili*, III, 95–98)

### LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117–125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsiō, nūllum spatiū perterritis dari oportēre existimāns, militēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Qui, etsi magnō aestū fatigāti—nam ad 5 meridiem rēs erat perducta—tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam qui ex aciē refūgerant militēs, 10 et animō perterriti et lassitūdine cōflectī, missīs plēriquē

1. vāllum: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. spatiū: *respite*.—perterritis: modifying *eis*, supplied.—dari oportēre: *should be allowed* (*oportet*, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. aestū: *aestus*, -ūs, M., *heat*.—fatigāti: *i.e.* dēfessī (*fatigō*, 1).

5. meridiem: *here*, *midday*.—rēs: *engagement*.

6. animō: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. castra: *namely*, of Pompey.—industriē: adv., *energetically*.

8. multō: construe with ācrius.

9. -que: *and (other)*.—qui . . . militēs: *i.e.* ei militēs, qui. —aciē: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. lassitūdine: *lassitudō*, -inis, F., *weariness*.—missīs: *discarded* (cf. dīmittō).—plēriquē: *freely*,

armis sīgnisque militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vällō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, 5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducib⁹ ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnīsque militūm, in altissimōs montēs, qui ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castris potitus, ā militib⁹ contendit nē, in praedā occupātī, reliqui negōtī gerendī facultātem dimit-  
terent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnire instituit.

## LESSON 130

*Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians*

Pompēiāni, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi ei locō, relictō monte, ūniversi iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit,

*in the majority of cases*; the word agrees with **militēs**, though in sense it belongs with the abl. **absol.** Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. **militāribus**: **militāris**, -is, -e, lit. **military**. **signa militāria** is the full expression for “standards”; usually the adj. is omitted.—dē reliquā fugā: *i.e. about resuming their flight.*

2. **diūtius**: **absol. compar.**  
3. **in vällō**: *i.e. to defend it.*  
4. **locum**: (*their*) **posts**.  
5. **ducib⁹ ūsi**: lit. **having (as) leaders**; translate freely.  
6. **altissimōs**: **absol. superl.**  
7. **cōnfūgērunt**: **cōfūgiō**, 3,

-fūgi, with in and the acc., *take refuge (upon)*.

8. **contendit**: *i.e. petivit.*

9. **montem**: *i.e. the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled.*—**circummūnire**: **circummūniō**, 4, *girdle*.

10. **Instituit**: *i.e. coepit (instituō), 3, -stitui, -stitutus).*

11. **diffisi**: **diffidō**, 3, -fīsus sum, with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

12. **iugis**: **iugum**, -i, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. “along” (way by which).—**eius**: *i.e. montis*.—**Lārisam**: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea. — **versus**: translate as if *ad . . . . versus* (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit, et prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, aciem instrūxit. Quā rē 5 animadversā, Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen sublūebat. Caesar militēs cohortātus, et si tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōflectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent.

- 10 Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Pauci ōrdinis senātōrii, qui sē cum his coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locis in plāniūm dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. 15 Quod ubi sine recūsatiōne fēcērunt, passisque palmīs prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōnsolātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit.

1. Pompēi: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4.—remanēre: remaneō, 2, -mānsi, -mānsum est, remain.

2. sua: note the position.

3. commodiōre: i.e. than the route taken by the enemy.

6. sublūebat: sublūō, 3, —, —, wash the base of.

7. continentī: as adj. (abl. case), unbroken.

8. suberat: i.e. aderat (subsum, -esse, -fui).—sēclūsit: sēclūdō, 3, -clūsi, -clūsus, shut off.

9. aquārī: aquor, I, get water.

10. opere: i.e. the mūnītiō of 1. 8.—dē dēditiōne: construe with agere.

11. senātōrii: senātōrius, -a,

-um, senatorial; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9).—his: i.e. the Pomeian forces.

12. nocte: i.e. noctū.

15. recūsatiōne: recūsatiō, -ōnis, F., protest (cf. recūsō).—palmīs: i.e. manibus (palma, -ae, F.)—prōiecti: freely, falling forward.

16. salūtem: i.e. (their) lives.—cōsolātus: sc. eōs.

17. cōnsurgere: i.e. surgere (cōnsurgō, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctum est).—apud eōs: in their hearing, i.e. to them.—lēnitāte: lēnitās, -ātis, F., humaneness.

18. quō: note the compar. in the clause.—minōre . . . timōre: abl. of characteristic.

## THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iulius*, 81, 82)

### LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on the fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiis caesis, cum litāre nōn posset, introiit cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irridēns et ut falsum arguēns, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adessent: quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās diceret, sed nōn praeterisse. Assidentem cōspirātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt; ilicōque Cimber Tillius, qui primās partēs suscēperat, quasi

1. plūribus: *i.e.* complūribus.  
— hostiis: hostia, -ae, F., sacrificial victim.— caesis: caedō, 3, cecidi, caesus, *slay*.— cum: concessive.— litāre: litō, I, -āvī, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens*; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse.— introiit: introeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter*.

2. cūriam: cūria, -ae, F., *senate house*.— sprētā: from spērñō.— Spurinnam: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (*Idūs Mārtiae*, l. 3).

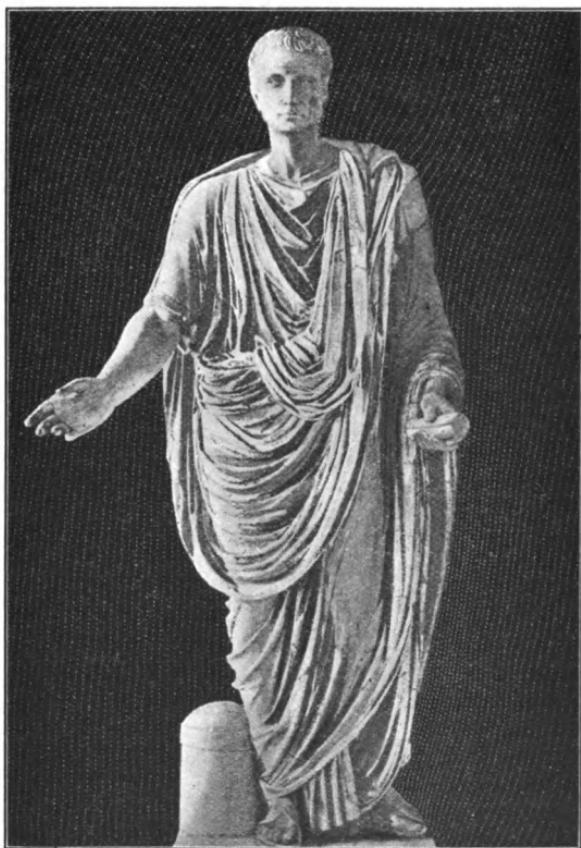
— irridēns (-entis, part.): *deriding*.— ut falsum: *as (a) false prophet*.

3. arguēns (-entis, part.): *as sailing*.— quod: *as on p. 55, l. 11.*  
— suā noxā (noxa, -ae, F.): *harm to him* (Caesar).

4. is: *i.e.* Spurinna.

5. assidentem: sc. Caesarem (assidō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, *take one's seat*).— cōspirātī (-ōrum, M.): *the conspirators*.— officiī: *of (showing) respect*.

6. ilicō (adv.): *i.e.* statim.— primās partēs: *i.e. the leading role*.



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors  
the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentīque et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs est," alter ē Cascis āversum vulnerat, paulum īfrā iugulum.

5 Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertisit undique sē strīctis pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad ima crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam īferiore corporis 10 parte vēlātā. Atque ita tribus et vigintī plāgīs cōnfossus est, ūnō modo ad prīmum īctum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsī trādidērunt quidam Mārcō Brūtō inruenti dīxisse, "Kal-

1. aliquid rogātūrus: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — renuenti: sc. Caesarī (renuō, 3, -nuī, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — gestū: *gesture*.

2. differenti: sc. eum, lit. *putting (him) off*. — ab: *at*; cf. the use of ex in phrases like omnibus ex partibus. — togam: *toga, -ae, F., robe*. — apprehendit: *apprehendō, 3, -prehēdi, -prehēnsus, lay hold of*.

3. clāmantem: sc. Caesarem. — ista: for istud (subject of est); cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30, l. 6. — vīs: (*downright*) *violence*. — Cascis: the two were brothers (nom. Casca).

4. āversum: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — īfrā: *prep., below*. — iugulum: *iugulum, -i, N., neck*.

5. bracchium: *bracchium, -i, N., arm*. — graphiō: *graphium, -i, N., stylus*. — trāiēcit: *trāiciō, 3, -iēci, -iectus, pierce*.

6. prōsilire: *prōsiliō, 4, -ui, leap forward*. — tardātus est: tardō, 1, *stop*. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

7. strīctis: *strictus, -a, -um, part., drawn*. — pūgiōnibus: *i.e. sīcīs (pūgiō, -ōnis, M.)*. — togā: cf. l. 2.

8. obvolvit: *obvolvō, 3, -volvi, -volütus, shroud*. — sinistrā: *sini-ster, -tra, -trum, left*. — sinum: *sinus, -ūs, M., fold*; translate here as pl., *(its) folds*. — ad ima crūra: *i.e. to his ankles (crūs, crūris, N., leg)*.

9. honestius: *honestē (adv.), in seemly fashion*.

10. vēlātā: *i.e. tēcta (vēlō, 1)*. — plāgīs: *i.e. vulneribus (plāga, -ae, F.)*.

11. ūnō: construe with gemitū. — modo: *i.e. tantum*. — ad: *at*. — īctum: *ictus, -ūs, M., blow*. — vōce: *articulation*.

12. inruenti: *inruēns, -entis, part., pressing forward*. — dīxisse: sc. eum (*i.e. Caesarem*). — Kal ἀν τέκνον; *you too, my boy?*

σὺ τέκνον;” Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctis, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lecticae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servoli domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut Antistius medicus existimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi 5 quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

## THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

### LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions ; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quintium Flāminīnum cōsulārem

1. *exanimis* (-is, -e) : *lifeless*. — *diffugientibus* : *diffugiō*, 3, -fūgi, *scatter*. — *cūnctis* : *i.e. omnibus*, as noun (*cūncti*, -ae, -a).
2. *lecticae* : *lectica*, -ae, *F.*, *litter*. — *dēpendente* : *dēpendēns*, -entis, part., *hanging down*. — *bracchiō* : cf. p. 168, l. 5.
3. *servoli* : *servolus*, -i, *M.*, *young slave*; cf. *servus*. — *rettulērunt* : sc. *eum*. — *in* : *among*. — *ut* : *as*.
4. *medicus* (-i, *M.*) : *physician*. — *lētāle* : *i.e. exitiāle* (*lētālis*, -is,
- e). — *nisi quod* : *excepting (one) which*.
5. *secundō* : *i.e. specially vulnerable*; lit. *favorable*. — *pectore* : *pectus*, -oris, *N.*, *chest*.
6. *quae* : *i.e. events narrated in previous chapters*. — *Asiā* : *i.e. Asia Minor*. — *accidit* : impersonal expression. — *cāsū* : *i.e. forte*. — *Prūsiae* (nom. in -a, or -ās) : *king of Bithynia* (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The gen. may be rendered “from.”
7. *cōsulārem* : *cōsulāris*, -is, *M.*, *ex-consul*.

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, qui Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īsidiīs futūrōs existimārent, 5 lēgātōs in Bīthyniam mīsērunt (in eis Flāmininūm), quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehendērent; locum, 10 ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

## LESSON 133

*Death rather than Captivity*

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. mentiōne: mentiō, -ōnis, F., mention.

2. diceret: in the same construction as cēnārent, l. 1. — eum: Hannibal.

3. patrēs cōscripti: i.e. the senators (cōscriptus, -a, -um, lit. enrolled). — Hannibale vīvō: abl. absol.; translate by a clause introduced by "as long as."

4. existimārent: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.

5. in eis: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. inimīcissimum suum: their deadly foe. — sēcum habēret: i.e. harbor.

7. sibique dēderet: i.e. eumque ut sibi dēderet. — his: i.e. lēgātis. — illud . . . nē: this . . . that.

8. id: a thing; antecedent of quod. — adversus (prep.): i.e. contrā.

9. hospitiī: hospitium, -ī, N., hospitality. — ipsī . . . comprehendērent: sc. eum, i.e. let them arrest him themselves.

10. inventūrōs: sc. eōs (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying recūsāvit, l. 8; cf. longum esse, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. enim: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — in: namely, in.

12. rēge: i.e. Prūsiā. — mūnerī: i.e. dōnō, dat. of service (mūnus, -eris, N.). — aedificārat: i.e. aedificāverat.

partibus aedificiū exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū veniret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgāti Rōmāni vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūris praeter cōnsuētūdinem 5 armātōs appārēre. Qui imperāvit ei ut omnīs forīs circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāset, omnīsque exitūs occupatōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē peti neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinen- 10 dam. Quam nē alienō arbitriō dimitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtū, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō.

1. aedificiū: aedificium, -ī, N., structure.—verēns: i.e. veritus.—ūsū veniret: sc. id (subject), i.e. that (thing) would happen.

2. quod accidit: which (actually) did come to pass (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place). — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. puer: i.e. servus. — iānuā: iānua, -ae, F., door.

4. plūris: modifying armātōs, l. 5. — praeter cōnsuētūdinem: than usual; lit. beyond the ordinary.

5. appārēre: i.e. in cōspectū esse (appārēō, 2, -ui). — qui: i.e. Hannibal. — ei: i.e. puerō. — forīs: i.e. exitūs (cf. l. 1).

6. properē (adv.): i.e. celeriter.—num: conjunction, whether.

7. puer cum: i.e. cum puer. — renūntiāset: renūntiō, I, report.

8. sēnsit: subject, Hannibal. — fortuitō (adv.): i.e. cāsū.

9. factum: sc. esse. — retinendam: render the gerundive by "could."

10. quam: i.e. vītam. — nē: freely, to avoid (with part. in -ing). — arbitriō: arbitrium, -ī, N., bidding.

11. virtūtū: freely, career of valor.

12. cōnsuērat: i.e. cōnsuēverat.

13. perfūnctus: perfungor, 3, -fūnctus sum, experience. This verb takes the same construction as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit: acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, rest, i.e. die.

## CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust. *Bellum Catilinae*, 40, 41, 60)

### LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requirat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem belli, existimāns pūblicē privātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa 5 esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque principibus civitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. P. : *i.e.* Pūbliō.—dat: subject, Lentulus. —utī: *i.e.* ut.

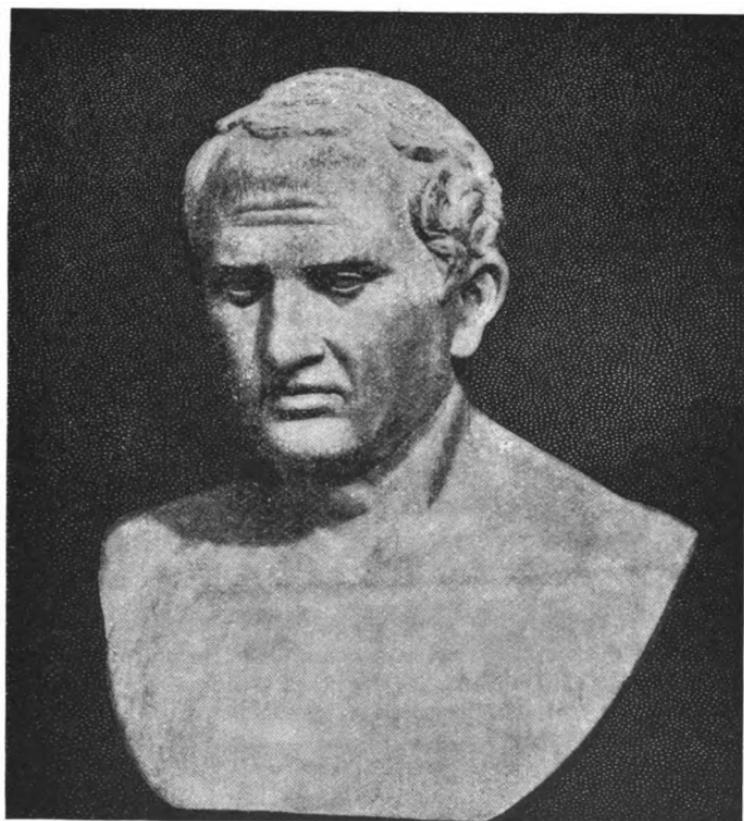
2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. —requirat: re-quirō, 3, -quisiū, -quisitus, seek out. —impellat: impellō, 3, -puli, -pulsus, incite. —societātem: societās, -ātis, F., with gen., partnership (*in*).

3. pūblicē privātimque: advs., as a people and as individuals.

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. —bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. —tāle: tālis, -is, -e, such a.

7. civitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. —nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvi, nōtus: become acquainted with.



MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi prīmū lēgātōs in forō cōnspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū civitatis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requirere coepit, quem exitum tantis malis spērārent. Postquam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātū, accūsāre 5 senātū quod in eō auxilī nihil esset, miserīs suis remedium mortem exspectāre, "at ego," inquit, "vōbis, si modo viri esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis."

## LESSON 135

*The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy*

Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adducti, 10 Umbrēnum ḍrāre ut suī miserētur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūri essent, dum ea rēs civitātem aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūti perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus: percontor, 1, ask.

2. statū: status, -ūs, M., with gen., situation (*in*). — civitatis: sc. eōrum. — quasi: cf. p. 166, l. 6. — dolēns: doleō, 2, -uī, be concerned about.

3. requirere: inquire (cf. p. 172, l. 2). — exitum: solution, lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1). — tantis malis: dat. case.

4. magistrātū: magistrātus, -ūs, M., official. — accūsāre: accusō, 1, rail at.

5. quod: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13. — eō: i.e. senātū. — miserīs: miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles. — remedium: (as) a solution (remedium, -i, N.).

7. viri esse: i.e. play the part

of men. — tanta: freely, overwhelming. — ista: those . . . of yours.

10. ḍrāre: for ḍrāvērunt. — suī: gen. pl. — miserētur: miseror, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., take pity (on). — nihil, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying ḍrāre.

11. neque: translate "or." — quod nōn . . . factūri essent: that they would not undertake it; a relative clause of result.

12. dum: provided only. — ea rēs: it. — aere aliēnō: translate the abl. "from" or "of." — ille: Umbrenus.

13. in domum: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11. — D.: i.e. Decimil.

neque aliena cōnsili propter Semprōniām: nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabiniūm arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūratiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis 5 innoxīōs, quō lēgātis animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dimittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsili caperent: in alterā parte erat aes alienū, studium belli, magna mercēs in spē victōriāe, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, 10 tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illis volventibus, tandem vicit fortūna rei pūblicae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō civitās plūrimum ūtēbātur, rem omnem, uti cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna: with gen., *unfriendly* (*to*). — Semprōniām: wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. quō: note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. sermōnī: sermō, -ōnis, M., *interview*.—inesset: īsum, īsse, infui, with dat., lit. *be (in)*; translate the phrase freely.—eō: *i.e.* Gabiniō.

4. nōminat: nōminō, I, *name*. — praetereā: (*and*) *in addition*.

5. innoxīōs: pred. adj. (*innocuous, -a, -um, innocent*). — amplior: amplus, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the adv. amplius).

6. īuam: modifier of operam. — domum: *i.e.* to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt): *freely, were undecided*. — quidnam: *what . . . really*, -nam being an intensive particle. — cōnsili: for syntax, cf. quid . . . causae, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9): *the one . . . the other*. — studium (-i, N.): with gen., *liking (for)*.

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.): *inducement*. — opēs: namely, those of the government (*ops, opis, F., help; pl., resources*).

10. illis: *i.e. Allobrogibus*.

11. volventibus: volvō, 3, volvi, volūtus, *turn over in (one's) mind*; cf. the note on dēfendente, p. 44, l. 17. — tandem: adv., *at length*. — rei pūblicae: sc. Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō: patrōcinium, -i, N., *legal services*. — plūrimum: see multum.

13. uti (*i.e. ut*): *as*. — cōgnōverant: sc. eam. — Cicerō: see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōnsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātis praecepit, ut studium cōfirātiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam utī eōs quam maximē manifēstōs habeant.

## LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade their countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, easily secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict nine of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the public prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of Catiline (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by the government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a division which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran officer named Petreius.

5 Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātis, Petreius tubā sīgnū dat, cohortis paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostiū exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferentāriī proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum infēstis sīgnis concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiis rēs geritur. Ve-

1. praecepit (for praecepit): i.e. imperat (praecipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus). — studium: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs: i.e. the other conspirators in Rome.

3. utī: *that*. — maximē: cf. the note on p. 44, l. 11. — manifēstōs: manifēstus, -a, -um, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. sed: *now*. — explōrātis: *inspected*. — tubā: tuba, -ae, F., trumpet. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. dat: if rendered as a past,

use the pluperfect. — cohortis: sc. suās. — incēdere: incēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *advance*. — hostiū: i.e. Catiline and his followers.

7. eō . . . unde: *to a point where* (lit. *whence*). — ferentāriī: ferentāriī, -ōrum, M., *light-armed troops* (e.g. slingers; cf. the top illustration on p. 140).

9. omittunt: *make no use of*; lit. omīt (omittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus). Contrast the regular procedure for beginning battle, p. 161, l. 9. — rēs: *the fighting*. — veterāni: i.e. of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus āriter īstāre, illī haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in pīmā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcēssere, 5 omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnui militis et boni imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilinam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohorte:n praetōriam in mediōs hostis indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resi- 10 stentis interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs ad-greditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in pīmīs pugnantēs cadunt. Catilina, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis

1. comminus: adv., *at close quarters*. — Instāre: īstō, i., -stīti, *press the fight*. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. illi: *i.e. their opponents*. — haud timidē: *i.e. boldly* (timidē, adv., *with fear*). — certātur: *i.e. dimicatur* (*certō, i., -āvī, -ātūm est*).

3. pīmā: *the front of*; cf. the use of *summum*, p. 104, l. 4.

4. labōrantibus: part. (sc. eis), *those hard pressed*. — succurrere: *i.e. auxiliō venīre* (*succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est*). — prō: *freely, to replace*. — sauciīs: *i.e. vulne-ratīs* (*saucus, -a, -um*).

6. ferīre: *i.e. percutere* (*feriō, 4, —, —*). — exsequēbātur: *i.e. praestābat* (*exsequor, 3, -secūtūs sum*); cf. p. 129, l. 9.

7. contrā: adv., lit. *differently*. — ac: *than*, lit. *as*. The whole phrase = *praeter spem*, p. 161, l. 10.

8. tendere: *tendō, 3, tetendī,*

*tentus, stretch; here, exert (one's self)*. — mediōs: *who occupy the center*.

9. indūcit: *indūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus*, lit. *lead (against)*. — atque: connecting the two participles. — aliōs alibī: *some in one place, some in another*; cf. *alii in aliam*, p. 80, l. 5.

10. utrimque: adv., *on either side*. — lateribus: cf. *latera*, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) *omnibus ex partibus*, etc. — adgreditur: *i.e. adoritur* (*adgredior, 3, -gressus sum*). Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

11. Mānlius et Faesulānus: *Mānlius and the citizen of Faesulae* (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants. — in pīmīs: *i.e. in the front rank*.

12. fūsās: *fundō, 3, fūdi, fūsus, scatter*. — paucis: *i.e. (but) a handful*.

relictum videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae dignitatis, in confertissimos hostis incurrit, ibique pugnans confoditur.

## ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

### LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline, Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of Cilicia and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter which he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et propter 5 annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōfēstīm esse eundum vidērem, bīdūm Lāodicēae fui, deinde Apamēae quadri-dūm, trīdūm Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēlii. Quibus in oppidīs cum magni conventūs fuissent, multās civitātēs acerbissimīs tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō aere

1. generis . . . dignitatis: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. hostis: *i.e.* the government forces.—incurrit: incurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est: *plunge (in among).*

4. cum, etc.: translate by a partic. clause.—pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.* pridiē Kalendās Sextilīs, *the day before the first of August (Sextilis, -is, -e), namely, July 29, as the calendar was then arranged.*

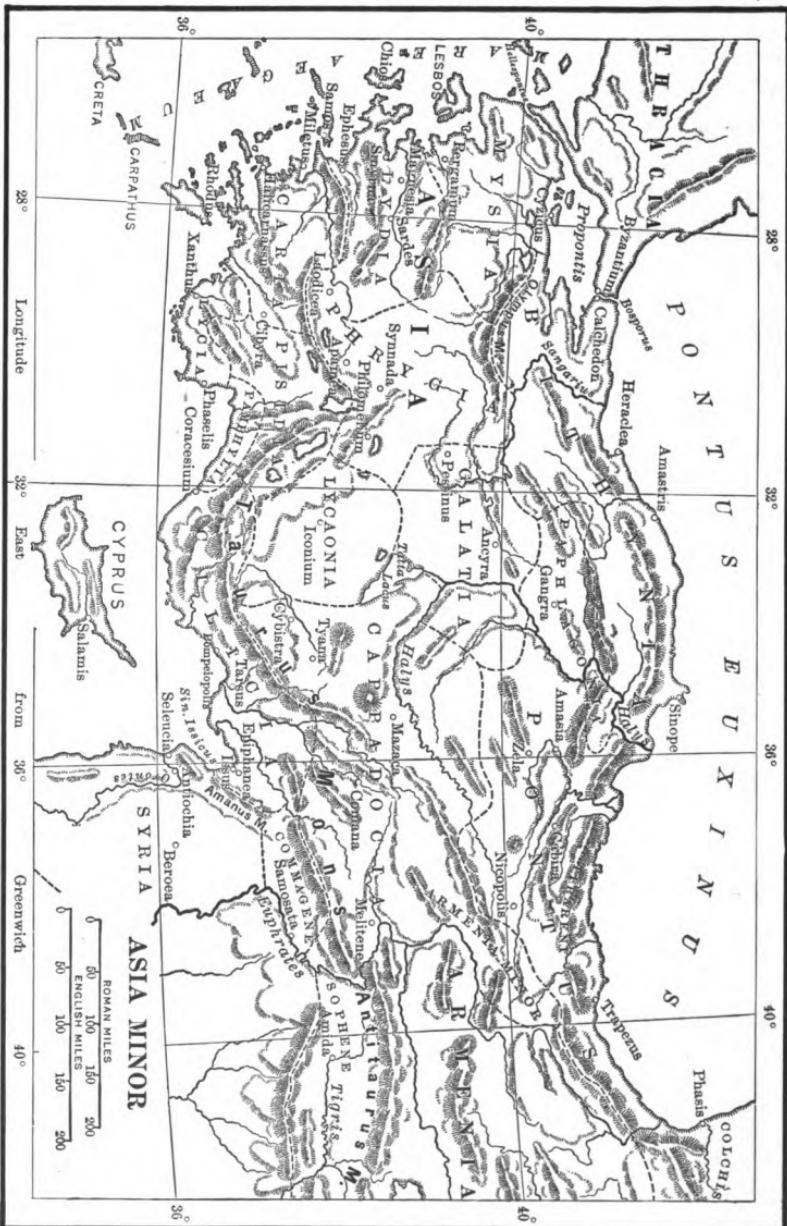
5. cōfēstīm: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.).—eundum: not eundem.

6. bīdūm: cf. bīdū, p. 158, l. 4.—Lāodicēae: see the western end of the map on p. 179.—fui: *I stopped.*

7. Synnadīs: pl. city names have the same form for loc. and abl.—totidem: indeclinable adj., *the same number of.*—Philomēlii: for case, cf. domī.

8. conventūs: *conventus, -ūs, M., circuit court.*—fuissent: *freely, had been held.*

9. acerbissimīs tribūtīs, etc.: for syntax, cf. aere alienō, p. 174, l. 12.—ūsūrīs: *ūsūra, -ae, F., rate of interest.*



aliēnō liberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditiōne quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quīnque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō militum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus 5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quīnque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō diligenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiōribus diēbus ex senātūs cōnsultō et ēvocātōrum fīrmam manū et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum liberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissem.

## LESSON 138

*A War Scare*

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgāti ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch as.* — sēditiōne: sēditiō, -ōnis, F., *mutiny.*

2. quādam: *a sort of.* — esset dissipātus: dissipō, I., *disrupt.* Supply et after this verb, and after cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e. ad;* so also in l. 7.  
8. quod: *relative.*

9. a.d. vii K. Sept.: *i.e. ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs, the seventh (we would say, sixth) day before the first of September, namely, August 24,* as the calendar was then arranged. — cum, etc.: translate by a partic. phrase. — superiōribus: *the preceding.*

10. ex: *in accordance with.* — cōsultō: cōsultum, -ī, N., *decree.* — et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and . . . and.* — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātūs, -ī, M., *reënlisted man.*

11. sānē: *adv., quite.* — liberōrum: liber, -era, -erum, *independent, or free.* The genitives may be rendered freely “supplied by”; cf. Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: *as adj., allied.* — voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer.* — comparāvissem: comparō, I, *get together.*

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, I, *review.*

14. K. Sept.: *i.e. Kalendis Septembribus (abl. of time when).* — Commāgēnō: *an adj.*

missi, tumultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam trānsisse nūntiāvērunt; quō audītō, vehementer sum com-mōtus cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā dēnique Asiā.

5 Itaque in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud oppidum Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappadociam tenēns nova fīnitimōrum cōnsilia impeditrem.

Intereā cōgnōvī multōrum litteris atque nūntiis magnās Parthōrum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam accessisse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam trānsisset, ab equitum meōrum turmis et ā cohorte prae-tōriā, quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occidiōne occīsum. Quārē, cum vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās āversās, nōn longē ā fīnibus esse Ciliciae, quam potuī maxi-mis itineribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēni,

1. missi: not misi. — tumultuōsē: adv., *in great alarm*. — nōn vērē: freely, *without foundation in fact* (*vērē*, adv., lit. *truthfully*). — Parthōs: two years before, the Ro-mans had suffered crushing defeat at the hands of this warlike people.

3. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also*. — dē: *with reference to*. — meā: note the position of the word.

4. Asiā: as on p. 169, l. 6.

5. Cappadociā: see the map on p. 179. — extrēmā: extrēmus, -a, -um, lit. *farthest*; translate freely (cf. the rendering of primus, sum-mus, etc.) — apud: as on p. 180, l. 4.

6. Cybistra: in apposition with oppidum; render, however, as if a genitive. — tuērer: *tueor*, 2, —, *protect*.

7. tenēns: *while occupying*. Cicero anticipated that the Par-thian invaders would take this more northern route. — nova . . . cōnsilia: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10. — fīnitimōrum: translate the gen. “on the part of.”

10. eōrum: *of theirs*.

11. turmis: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. occidiōne occīsum: *had been annihilated* (occidiō, -ōnis, F., *utter destruction*).

14. quam potuī maximis: *i.e.* the longest possible; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. Amānum: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — ut: *i.e.* ubi.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōnfēstīm iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suis cōpiis certiōrem fēci nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā s̄ rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

## LESSON 139

*Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention*

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam ante statueram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre 10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrēxī. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. *ab*: from the neighborhood of (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — recessisse: recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, fall back. — Bibulum: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -que with this clause.

2. Dēiotarum: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cicero had been glad to accept. — *ad*: i.e. to join. — *venientem*: translate by a relative clause.

3. *et . . . et . . . et*: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adjs.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — *suis cōpiis*: his following.

4. *nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset*: there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself; lit. what?

5. *mē*: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — *sī quid*: if anything. — *novī*: as (neut.) noun. — *forte*: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. *cum*: causal. — *animō*: purpose. — *utrīque prōvinciae*: i.e. Cilicia and Syria. — *ita tempus ferret*: i.e. freely, should have opportunity.

8. *subvenīrem*: i.e. auxiliō essem (subveniō, 4, -vēni, -ventum est). — *tum*: now. — *id . . . agere perrēxi* (l. 11): I proceeded to carry out a project (pergō, 3, perrēxi, perrēctum est, proceed).

9. *interesse*: interest, -esse, -fuit, with gen., be to the interest (of). — *pācāre*: namely, (the project of) reducing to order.

10. *perpetuum hostem*: namely, some troublesome robber hordes.

11. -que: translate as if itaque.

et aliās partis Ciliciae potere, abesseisque ab Amānō iter ūnius diēi et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcisse, a. d. iiiii Id. Oct., cum advesperāceret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēci, ut a. d. iii Id. Oct., cum lūcisceret, in Amānum 5 ascenderem; distribūtisque cohortibus et auxiliis (cum aliis Quintus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliis C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopīnantis oppressimus: qui occīsī captīque sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quaē fuit 10 nōn vīcī instar sed urbīs, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, āriter et diū repugnantibus, Pomptīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēi X, magnā multitudine hostiū occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vi capta complūra incendimus. His

2. Epiphanēam: see the map on p. 179.—a. d. iiiii Id. Oct.: *i.e.* ante diem quārtum Idūs Octōbrēs, *on the fourth (we would say, third) day before the Ides of October,* namely, Oct. 12.

3. expeditō: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — ita: *i.e. at such speed.*

4. a. d. iii Id. Oct.: *Oct. 13* (cf. the note on l. 2). — lūcisceret: lūciscit, 3, —, —, *grow light.*

5. distribūtis: distribuō, 3, -ui, -ūtus, *divide up, or make a division of.* — cum aliis Quintus frāter . . . praeessent: *my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some, etc. (cf. aliī . . . aliī, p. 20, l. 15).*

6. lēgātus: *(as) lieutenant;* cf. Quintus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war. — simul: with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or." — interclūsī: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, *cut off.* — fugā: translate the abl. "from." — Eranam: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of cēpimus, l. 14.

10. instar: *the size (of);* cf. p. 32, l. 5. — quod: *(and) which;* for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — item: *adv., likewise.*

11. repugnantibus: *i.e. resisteribus (repugnō, 1);* abl. absol. with iīs (*i.e. incolis*) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. tenente: *i.e. keeping to.* — antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um, *preceding dawn.*

13. X: *i.e. decimam, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign;* cf. the dates above.

14. vi capta: *i.e. expugnāta.*

rēbus ita gestīs, castra in rādīcībus Amānī habuimus apud Ārās Alexandrī quadridūm, et in reliquīs Amānī dēlendīs agrīsque vāstandīs, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae est, id tempus omne cōnsūmpsimus.

## LESSON 140

*Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds*

5 Cōfēctīs hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicūm Pindēnissūm exercitūm addūxi. Quod cum esset altissimō et mūnitissimō locō, ab iīisque incolerētur, quī nē rēgibus quidem umquam pāruissent, cum et fugitivōs recipērent, et Parthōrum adventūm acerrimē exspectārent, ad existimātiōnēm imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimēre eōrum audāciām, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī aliēnī essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vāllō et fossā circumdedi, sex castellīs castrisque maximis saepsi, aggere, vīniis, turribus oppugnāvī, ūsusque tor-

1. rādīcībus: *foothills* (*rādīx*, -īcis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquīs: *i.e. the remaining landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36, l. 15.

3. vāstandīs: *vāstō*, I, *lay waste*. — quae pars eius montis: *i.e. in eā montis parte, quae*. — meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to* (*lit. is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindēnissūm: in apposition with oppidum. The exact location of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this was (located)*.

7. mūnitissimō: transl. the superl. "strongly." — iis . . . qui: with subjunctive, *such (people) as*;

for the position of -que, cf. ob eamque causam, p. 129, l. 5. — rēgibus: namely, of their own.

8. cum: (*and*) *since*. — fugitivōs: *fugitivus*, -ī, M., *runaway slave*.

9. existimātiōnēm: *existimātiō*, -ōnis, F., *prestige*.

10. imperī: (*our*) *government*. — comprimēre: *comprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — aliēnī . . . ab: *ill disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 17.

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedi: sc. *oppidum*.

14. saepsi: *saepiō*, 4, *saepsi*, *saeptus, surround*. — aggere: *ag-*

mentis multis, multis sagittariis, magnō labore meō, sine ullā molestiā sumptuve sociōrum, septimō quinquagēsimō diē rem cōnfēci, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbatis aut incēnsis, compulsi in potestatē meam pervenirent.

5 His erant finitimi parī scelere et audaciā Tebarāni. Ab iis, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī; exercitum in hiberna dīmisi; Quintum frātrem negōtiō praeposui, ut in vīcis aut captis aut male pācātis exercitus collocārētur.

ger, -eris, M., mound (of earth or other material). — viniis: vinia,

-ae, F., penthouse. — tormentis: tormentum, -i, N., catapult. Cf. the ballista shown on p. 29.

1. sagittariis: sagittarius, -i, M., bowman. — meō: on my part.

2. molestiā: molestia, -ae, F., inconvenience. — sumptū: sumptus, -ūs, M., expense. — sociōrum: to (lit. of) the friendly natives (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. ut: introducing a result

clause. — disturbatis: disturbō, I, wreck.

4. compulsi: freely, in despair, lit. forced (to it); sc. hostēs.

5. his: the people just subdued. — parī: pār, paris, adj., equal. — scelere: scelus, -eris, N., guilt, lit. crime; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — Tebarāni: subject of erant.

7. negōtiō . . . ut . . . exercitus collocārētur: freely, the business of quartering the army; lit. what? — aut captis, etc.: translate by a relative clause.

## WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (\*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following:—

**ā-**, **ab-**: *away, aside, off.*

**ad-**: *to, into, near, by, at.*

**circum-**: *around.*

**con-**: *with, together* (*con-* being a form of *cum*). Often denotes completion (*e.g.* *cōficiō* [*faciō*]), or energy of action (*e.g.* *contendō*).

**dē-**: *from, down.*

**dis-**: *from, away, separately.*

**ē-, ex-**: *forth, out, from, up.* Often denotes success (*e.g.* *expugnō*), or energy of action (*e.g.* *excipiō* [*capiō*]).

**in-**: *upon, on, in.*

**in-**: *not, or un-.*

**inter-**: *between.*

**ob-**: *before, against.*

**per-**: *through, across.* Often intensive, *very, exceedingly.*

**prae-**: *before, in advance, over.*

**praeter-**: *by, past.*

**priō-**: *before, forth, forward, out, fore-.*

**re-**: *back, again.*

**sub-**: *under.*

**trāns-**: *across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted: **ā-**, **ab-** (**abs-**) ; **ad-** (**ac-**, **af-**, **al-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **a[s]-**, **at-**) ; **con-** (**col-**, **com-**, **co-**) ; **dis-** (**dif-**, **di-**) ; **ē-**, **ex-** (**ec-**, **ef-**, **e[x]-**) ; **in-** (**ig-**, **il-**, **im-**) ; **inter-** (**intel-**) ; **ob-** (**oc-**, **op-**) ; **re-** (**red-**) ; **sub-** (**sus-**, **su[s]-**) ; **trāns-** (**trā-**).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, *e.g.*:

**a** or **e** becomes **i**; **as-ficiō** (for *faciō*) and **-tineō** (for *teneō*).

**ae** becomes **ī**: **as-cidō** (for *caedō*; cf. *caedēs*) and **-īquus** (for *aequus* in *iniquus*).

## I

ad\*  
 appellō\* (-āre), *appella-*  
 tion  
 autem\*  
 circum\*, *circum-ference*  
 coepī\*  
 crēdō\*, *creed*  
 cum\* (conj.)  
 cursus\*  
 diū\*  
 diversus\*, *diverse*  
 ē, ex\*  
 enim\*  
 eō\* (verb)  
 et\*  
 etiam\*  
 exeō\*, *exit*  
 habeō\*  
 homō\*, *hom-i-cide*  
 ille\*  
 in\*  
 intellegō\*, *intelligent*  
 interdum\*  
 interpōnō\*  
 inveniō\*, *inven-tion*  
 ipse\*  
 ita\*  
 iam\*  
 iuvenis\*, *juvenile*  
 labōrō\*  
 lītus\*  
 longē\*  
 magnus\*, *magni-tude*  
 mare\*, *marine*  
 multus\*, *multi-tude*  
 nāscor\*, *nāl*  
 nauta\*, *nauti-cal*  
 nāvigō\*, *naviga-tion*  
 nāvis\*, *nav-al*  
 nēmō

neque, nec\*  
 nūllus\*, *nulli-fy*  
 ölim\*  
 oppidum\*  
 pater\*, *pater-nal*  
 pecūnia\*, *pecuniary*  
 perveniō\*  
 portus\*  
 possum\*, *poss-ibility*  
 posteā\*, *post-pone*  
 prōgredior\*  
 prope\* (adv.)  
 prope\* (prep.)  
 puer\*, *puer-ile*  
 -que\*  
 quī\* (relative)  
 quīdam\*  
 quod\* (conj.)  
 rēx\*, *reg-al*  
 saepe\*  
 secundum\* (prep.)  
 sed\*  
 spērō\*, *de-sperate*  
 suī\*, *sui-cide*  
 sum\*, *essence*  
 suspicor\*  
 tam\*  
 tempus\*, *tempor-al*  
 teneō\*, *re-ten-tive*  
 terra\*, *terr-estrial*  
 timeō\*, *tim-id*  
 trānseō\*, *transit*  
 tum\*  
 usque\*  
 ut, utī\*  
 via\*, *imper-vi-ous*  
 videō\*, *e-vident*  
 volō\*, *vol-untary*

## 2

ad . . . versus\*

advena\* (ad + veniō)  
 aperiō\*, *aper-ture*  
 audiō\*, *audi-torium*  
 avis, *avi-ation*  
 bellum\*, *re-bell-ion.*  
 cantus, *chant*  
 cōgnōscō\*, *re-cognize*  
 cōsequor\*, *consequence*  
 cōnsilium\*, *counsel*  
 cum\* (prep.)  
 dīcō\*, *dic-tation*  
 diēs\*, *di-urnal*  
 dō\*, *do-nation*  
 faciō\*, *fac-tor*  
 fortiter\*, *forti-tude*  
 gerō\*, *belli-gerent*  
 ibi\*  
 igitur\*  
 ignōtus\*, *contrast noted*  
 insula, *insulate*  
 interim\*  
 is\*  
 itaque\*  
 iter\*, *itiner-ant*  
 laetus\*  
 libenter\*  
 mōns\*, *mount*  
 morior\*, *mori-bund*  
 nōlō\*  
 nūntius\*, *e-nunci-ate*  
 obtineō, cf. teneō  
 omnīs\*, *omni-potent*  
 paene\*, *pen-insula*  
 parō\*  
 parvus\*  
 pauci\*, *pauci-ty*  
 per\*, *per-forate*  
 periculum\*  
 petō\*, *pet-ition*  
 postrēmō\*  
 proficiscor\*

pulcher*	nōn*	subitō*
quaerō,* re- <i>quire</i>	numquam*	sustineō,* cf. teneō
quisquam*	passus*	tempestās,* <i>tempes</i> t
redeō* (red + eō)	post* (adv.), cf. posteā	ūnus,* <i>uni</i> -ty
rēgina, cf. rēx	prīmō,* <i>prim</i> -acy	ventus,* <i>venti</i> -late
rēgnū,* <i>regn</i> -ant	putō,* com- <i>pute</i>	
rēs,* <i>rēbus</i>	quārē*	5
suus,* cf. suī	quoque*	adeō (adv.)
tamen*	rāmus, <i>rami</i> -fy	amicus,* <i>amic</i> -able
trēs,* <i>tri</i> -nity	sentiō,* <i>senti</i> -ment	capiō,* <i>cap</i> -acity
ubi* (adv.)	statim*	cōnor*
ubi* (conj.)	ūllus,* cf. nūllus	dōnum,* cf. dō
validus,* <i>valid</i>	vehementer,* <i>vehement</i>	filius,* <i>fili</i> -al
vereor,* re-verent		forte,* <i>fort</i> -uitous
	4	idem,* <i>iden</i> -tical
3	amō,* <i>am</i> -iable	mīrus, <i>mir</i> -acle
ā, ab*	brevi,* <i>brevi</i> -ty	nārrō,* <i>narr</i> -ation
adeō* (verb), cf. eō	certus*	nōmen,* <i>nomin</i> -al
alius,* <i>ali</i> -bi	cīvis,* <i>civil</i>	nōtus,* cf. īgnōtus
animus,* <i>anim</i> -ated	colōnia*	nunc*
appropinquō*	colōnus*	piscis, <i>Pisces</i>
atque, ac*	compleō,* <i>comple</i> -ment	quīn* etiam
bāca	condō*	rapiō,* <i>rapine</i>
dē*	coorior*	semper*
domus,* <i>dom</i> -estic	fēliciter,* <i>feli</i> -ty	senex, <i>sen</i> -ility
dux,* <i>duke</i>	ferō,* re- <i>fer</i>	sōlum,* <i>sole</i> -ly
ēgredior,* <i>egress</i>	fiō,* <i>fiat</i>	vir,* <i>vir</i> -ile
gaudeō,* <i>gaudy</i>	fluctus, <i>fluctu</i> -ate	
gaza	haud*	6
harēna, <i>arena</i>	incolumis*	adorior*
ignis,* <i>ignite</i>	iniūria*	adversus,* <i>adver</i> se
incola*	interficiō*	argentum,* <i>Argentine</i>
inde*	iterum,* <i>iter</i> -ate	aurum, <i>auri</i> -ferous
irātus,* <i>irate</i>	littera*	castra,* <i>Chester</i>
iaciō,* <i>e-ject</i>	pars*	celeriter,* <i>celeri</i> -ty
māne*	praefectus,* <i>prefect</i>	cibus*
mīlle,* <i>mile</i>	properō*	cōgō,* <i>cogent</i>
moror*	relinquō,* <i>relinquish</i>	cōnsūmō,* <i>consum</i> -er
mox*	scribō,* <i>scribe</i>	dēdūcō,* <i>deduct</i>
nato	semel	flūmen*
noctū,* <i>noct</i> -urnal	spēs,* cf. spērō	fortis,* cf. fortiter
		frūmentum*

hostis,\* *hostile*  
 inmittō,\* cf. mittō (below)  
*miles,\* milit-ary*  
*mittō,\* re-mit*  
*nam\**  
*occidō,\* (sui)cide*  
*pōnō,\* post-pone*  
*prō,\* pro (and con)*  
*pugnō,\* pugna-cious*  
*recipiō,\* receipt*  
*ripa,\* ripa-rian*  
*sagitta,\* Sagittarius*  
*scapha\**  
*silva,\* silvan*  
*tēlum\**  
*vehō,\* veh-icle*

## 7

aqua,\* *aqua-tic*  
*arbor,\* arbor*  
*arma\**  
*collocō,\* cf. locus (below)*  
*frigus, frig-id*  
*fugiō,\* fugi tive*  
*humus,\* ex-hume*  
*insidiae,\* insidi-ous*  
*iaceō,\* ad-jacent*  
*iubeō\**  
*locus,\* loco-motive*  
*manus,\* manu-al*  
*modo\**  
*perterritus,\* cf. terreō  
 (below)*  
*prius,\* pri-ority*  
*procul\**  
*reducō,\* reduce*  
*soleō,\* ob-solete*  
*sonus,\* sono-rous*  
*terreō,\* terr-or*  
*veniō,\* con-vene*

8  
 accipiō,\* *accept*  
*captivus\**  
*clam\**  
*complūrēs,\* cf. plur-al*  
*cōnsendō,\* (a)scend*  
*cōpia,\* copi-ous*  
*dēmum\**  
*dōnec\**  
*dum\**  
*emō,\* red-emption*  
*habitō,\* habita-tion*  
*hic\* (pron.)*  
*idōneus\**  
*miser,\* misery*  
*nesciō,\* contrast science*  
*novus,\* nov-el*  
*quō\* (adv.)*  
*reportō,\* report*  
*sacerdōs,\* sacerdot-al*  
*sequor,\* con-sequence*  
*servō,\* con-serve*  
*suprā\**  
*tractō,\* tract-able*  
*vēndō,\* vend-er*

## 9

dūcō,\* pro-duce  
*effugiō,\* cf. fugiō*  
*frangō,\* frag-ile*  
*frustrā,\* frustrate*  
*longus\**  
*mālō\**  
*paulō\**  
*pīrāta\**  
*poena,\* penal*  
*praeda,\* pred-a-tory*  
*sēdecim*  
*vēlum,\* veil*  
*vetus, veter-an*

10  
*carō,\* carn-al*  
*certē*  
*corpus,\* corpor-eal*  
*edō,\* ed-ible*  
*equus,\* equ-estrian*  
*famēs,\* fam-iné*  
*filia,\* cf. filius*  
*impetus,\* impetu-ous*  
*iuvō,\* coad-ju-tor*  
*mātrimōnium, matri-  
 mony*  
*mēnsis\**  
*mentior*  
*obses\**  
*oppidānī,\* cf. oppidum*  
*pereō,\* cf. eō (verb)*  
*puella\**  
*quamquam\**  
*quondam,\* quondam  
 (adj.)*  
*trādō,\* tradition*  
*uxor,\* uxor-ious*

## II

cōspectus,\* *conspectus*  
*deinde\**  
*duo,\* du-al*  
*explōrō\**  
*ferē\**  
*fretum, frith (?)*  
*hic\* (adv.)*  
*lēniter,\* leni-ty*  
*lūna, lunar*  
*nō\**

## I 2

altus,\* alti-tude  
*āmittō,\* cf. mittō*  
*angustus*  
*annus,\* annu-al*

conveniō,\* *convene*

excipiō\*

hiemō\*

magister, *magistr-ate*negōtior, *negotiate*

(posterus)\*

scelerātus

sub,\* *sub-tract*

## I3

agō,\* *ag-itate*ante\* (adv.), *anti-cipate*

apud\*

clāmor,\* *clamor*cōnstituō,\* *constitu-tion*currō,\* *in-cur-sion*deus,\* *dei-ty*

ēmigrō

ērumpō,\* *eruption*grātia,\* *grace*

interdiū

lēgātus,\* *de-legate*

līberī\*

morbus,\* *cholera* *morbus*nox,\* *equi-nox*reliquis,\* cf. *relinquo*

saxum\*

tūtus, *tute-lage*

undique\*

vulnērō,\* *vulner-able*

## I4

acerbus, *acerbi-ty*ambulō,\* *per-ambulate*asper,\* *asperi-ty*

aut\*

cadō,\* *de-cadence*commoveō,\* *commotion*

dēsum

hiems,\* cf. *hiemō*

inquam\*

loquor,\* *loqu-acity*

maestus\*

-ne

numerus,\* *numer-al*prōpōnō, *propose*proximus,\* *proximi-ty*rideō, *ridi-culous*sūmō,\* *re-sume*tacitus,\* *tacit*

tū\*

verbum,\* *verb-al*virtūs,\* cf. *vir*vōx,\* *voc-al*

## I5

alter,\* *alter-ation*ambō,\* *ambi-guous*arbitror,\* *arbitra-tion*caedēs,\* *sui-cide*cōgitō,\* *cogitate*comes,\* *con-comit-ant*

concilium\*

contumēlia,\* *contumely*convocō,\* *convoca-tion*

crūdēlis

cūrō,\* *mani-cure*facile,\* *facili-ty*incendō,\* *incend-iary*inimicūs,\* *inimic-al*ostendō,\* *osten-tation*

recūsō\*

sīca\*

sīgnum\*

simul,\* *simul-taneously*

umquam\*

vincō,\* *con-vince*vulnus,\* cf. *vulnērō*

## I6

afficiō\*

amplector (com)plexus

bene,\* *bene-fit*dīmittō,\* cf. *mittō*frāter,\* *frater-nal*gravis,\* *grave*

policeor\*

religiō\*

secūris\*

venēnum, *venom*vērō,\* *veri-ly*

## I7

admoveō\*

animadvertō\*

ārdēns, *ardent*audeō,\* *aud-acious*bōs, *bov-in*castellum,\* *castle*cōnātus, cf. *cōnor*

dēfendō\*

dēpōnō, *depose*

dēsistō\*

extinguō

hōra\*

moneō, *moni-tor*

oppugnō,\* (ob + pugnō)

prōdō\*

salūs,\* *salut-ary*tantum,\* *tant-amount*tēctum, *pro-TECT*villa,\* *village*vocō,\* *in-voke*

## I8

aciēs\*

adiuvō,\* *co-adju-tor*

adsum\*

aedēs,\* *edi-fice*ager,\* *agri-culture*auxilium,\* *auxili-ary*caelum,\* *cel-estial*

fenestra

fuga,* cf. fugiō	persuādeō*	prōvincia*
imperātor,* imperat-ive	sedeō, sedent-ary	solvō,* dis-solve
latebrae,* cf. lateō (be- low)	socius*, soci-al	urbs,* urb-an
lateō,* latent		vivō,* re-vive
postquam,* cf. post (adv.)		
prōspiciō, prospect	21	24
scilicet*	abscidō, cf. occidō	agricola,* cf. ager
sicut*	caput,* capit-al (adj.)	assēnsus, assent
templum*	cōnsolōr, consola-tion	coerceō, coercion
tūtō, cf. tūtus	dēdō*	cruciātus,* cruci-fixion
	instruō,* instruction	iniussū,* cf. iubeō
19	intercipiō*	maneō*
āriter,* acri-monious	mora*	ōrō, ad-ora-tion
aestās	pāx,* pac-ific	prīnum,* cf. primō
dētrimentum,* detri- ment	perfugiō	quaestus,* quest
exercitus*	porta,* portal	superior *
expugnō*	sine,* sine-cure	
gēns,* gent-ile	vallēs*	25
longinquus,* cf. longus		adhūc*
modus,* mode	22	ballista
praeoccupō, preoccupy	ante,* (prep.) ante- chamber	cārus, chari-ty
přidem	audāctér,* audaci-ty	custōdia*
prīmus* prime	cēna	custōdiō*
sciō,* science	cēnō	mūrus, mur-al
singulī,* singul-ar	cōficiō*	nūntiō,* cf. nūntius
20	perpaucī, cf. paucī	obsideō,* obsess
ācer,* cf. āriter	pēs,* ped-al	opus,* oper-ate
armātus,* cf. arma	silentium*	praedium*
asciscō	sōpītus,* sop-orific	
dēnuō	surgō, in-surgent	26
ēripīō	vigilō, vigil	ancora*
exsiliō,* exul-tation		antequām,* cf. ante (adv.)
finis,* fin-al	23	cōsistō*
herba, herbage	aes*	īgnōminia, ignominy
minus,* minus	aliēnus,* alien	labor*
palūs*	clārus,* clari-fy	malus,* male-factor
perficiō,* perfect	cōmitās, comity	paulātim*
	cōmīter	propinquus, propinquity
	grātus*	revocō, revoke
	praemittō,* premise	
	propter*	

## 27

- abeō,\* cf. eō (verb)  
 aliquamdiū,\* cf. diū  
 appellō\* (-ere)  
 ars, art-ist  
 condūcō  
 discō, disc-iple  
 lūdō, col-lusion  
 māter,\* mater-nal  
 post,\* (prep.) post-pone  
 sexāgintā\*  
 simulō,\* simulate  
 tribūnus\*

## 28

- arceō  
 at\*  
 casa\*  
 cōnsidō,\* (sub)side  
 īstar  
 lectus\*  
 mōs, mor-al  
 regiō\*  
 rīvus,\* de-riv-ation  
 tōtus\*  
 ündēvigintī

## 29

- advesperāscit, cf. vespers  
 dēligō\*  
 difficilis\*  
 discēdō,\* (re)cede  
 impedimenta,\* impedi-  
 ment  
 nisi\*  
 patior,\* patient  
 periculōsus, cf. pericu-  
 lum  
 respondeō,\* respond  
 sī\*  
 tollō,\* ex-tol

## 30

- frigidus, *frigid*  
 glaciēs,\* *glacier*  
 illūcēscō,\* (trans) *lucent*  
 magis\*  
 mātūrē  
 molestē\*  
 occupō,\* *occupa-tion*  
 pertinācia, cf. teneō  
 satis,\* *satisfactory*  
 trāns,\* *trans-it*  
 ünā,\* *uni-ty*

## 31

- condiciō\*  
 expellō,\* *expel*  
 explōrātor\*  
 invītus\*  
 legiō\*  
 nē . . . quidem\*  
 opera,\* *opera-tives*  
 ultrō\*  
 unde\*

## 32

- admoneō,\* cf. moneō  
 cēdō,\* re-cede  
 centuriō\*  
 cohortor\*  
 compellō, *compulsion*  
 incommodum, *incom-  
 mode*  
 inrumpō,\* cf. ērumpō  
 lacus\*  
 proelium\*  
 reliquiae, cf. reliquo  
 statuō,\* *statute*  
 temerē,\* *temeri-ty*  
 ululātus\*

## 33

- alibī, cf. alius  
 dēmittō\*  
 etsi\*  
 inferō,\* *infer*  
 laudō, *laud*  
 mātrōna, *matron*  
 ötiōsus, *otiose*  
 tantus,\* cf. tantum  
 victōria \*

## 34

- audācia,\* cf. audācter  
 commūnis, *communi-ty*  
 concēdō\*  
 exigō, *exact* (verb)  
 iūs,\* *jus-tice*  
 licet, *license*  
 memoria\*  
 postulō,\* *postulate*  
 repetō, cf. petō  
 senātus\*  
 sex,\* *sex-tant*  
 videor,\* cf. videō

## 35

- celeritās,\* cf. celeriter  
 collis\*  
 contineō, cf. teneō  
 cotidiē,\* cf. diēs  
 exstrū, cf. structur:  
 intrā,\* *intrant*  
 largior, *larg-ess*  
 libertās  
 meus,\* *meum* (and  
 tuum)  
 mūnitiō,\* *munitions*  
 pūblicus\*  
 quantus,\* *quant-i-ty*  
 vällum\*

veterānī, cf. *vetus*  
*vita*,\* *vital*

36

adferō\*  
*aliquī* (*aliquis*)\*  
*celebrō*  
*facultās*\*  
*hiberna*,\* *hibern-ate*  
*nanciscor*\*  
*nihil*,\* *nihil-ist*  
*stipendium*, *stipend*

37

*circumveniō*,\* *circum-*  
*vent*  
*cōservō*,\* cf. *servō*  
*dēvius*, *devious*  
*ego*,\* *ego-tism*  
*ēlūdō*,\* *elude*  
*glōrior* (*vain*)*glori-ous*  
*intempestus*\*  
*iste*\*  
*pugna*,\* cf. *pugnō*  
*strepitus*\*  
*tergum*,\* *tergi-versation*  
*vesper*, cf. *advesperāscit*

38

*comportō*,\* cf. *reportō*  
*dēditiō*, cf. *dēdō*  
*dubius*, *dubious*  
*ecfrēnātē*  
*eō*\* (adv.)  
*ēveniō*, *even-tuate*  
*ēventus*, *event*  
*pueritia*, cf. *puer*

39

*agmen*\*  
*circiter*,\* cf. *circum*

*cruentus*  
*dēficiō*,\* *deficit*  
*inferior*  
*inopia*,\* *contrast* of -ulent  
*multō*,\* cf. *multus*  
*necessārius*  
*nix*\*  
*nūdus*, *de-nude*  
*quinque*\*  
*sagum*  
*vestigium*, *vestige*

40

*classis*\*  
*coniungō*,\* *conjunction*  
*fallō*,\* *fall-ible*  
*meridiēs*,\* *meridian*  
*occāsiō*, *occasion*  
*potestās*,\* cf. *possum*  
*rārus*, *rare*  
*rursus*\*  
*servus*,\* *serv-i-le*  
*spectō*,\* *specta-cle*

41

*audāx*, cf. *audācter*  
*causa*\*  
*contrā*, *contra-dict*  
*damnō*,\* *con-demn*  
*dēlēō*,\* *dele-terious*  
*impetrō*\*  
*invisus*\*  
*mūniō*,\* cf. *mūnītiō*  
*nātūra*  
*nē*\*  
*perfidia*, *perfidy*  
*quam*\*  
*strēnuus*, *strenuous*

42

*anteā*,\* cf. *ante* (adv.)  
*exsilium*

*graviter*,\* cf. *gravis*  
*indicō*,\* (e) *dict*  
*permōtus*,\* cf. com-

*moveō*  
*saltem*

43

*aeger*\*  
*aegrē*  
*fortūna*\*  
*oculus*, *ocul-ist*  
*oppugnātiō*,\* cf. op-  
*pugnō*  
*tabernāculum*,\* *taber-*  
*nacle*  
*varius*\*

44

*contendō*,\* cf. *tend*  
*dexter*, *dexter-ous*  
*exspectō*,\* *expect*  
*fleō*  
*flōs*, *flor-ist*  
*imperium*,\* *empire*  
*inter*,\* *inter-sect*  
*lacrima*, *lachrym-ose*  
*multitūdō*,\* *multitude*  
*octō*,\* *oct-agon*  
*patria*,\* *patri-ot*  
*praesidium*\*  
*sic*\*

45

*abhinc*\*  
*antīquitus*, *antique*  
*honor*  
*hortor*,\* cf. *cohortor*

46

*cavus*, *cavi-ty*  
*committō*,\* *commit*  
*mulier*\*

priusquam,\* cf. prius  
quandō  
reperiō\*  
vīcus,\* War-wick

47

abripiō, cf. rapiō  
diligentia,\* *diligence*  
dominus,\* *domin-ate*  
ēvādō, *evade*  
facinus\*  
fidēlis,\* *fidel-i-ty*  
moribundus, cf. morior  
quis\* (indef.)  
stō,\* *sta-tionary*  
superbia, *superb*  
-ve\*  
vix\*

48

barbarus\*  
expediō,\* *expedite*  
firmō, *con-firm*  
incitō, *incite*  
intrō,\* cf. intrā  
praesum\*  
saltō

49

cēteri\*  
circumstō, *circumstance*  
extrā,\* *extra-ordinary*  
intervāllum,\* *interval*  
negōtiātor,\* cf. negōtior  
patefaciō  
plānē,\* *plain-ly*  
porrigō\*  
tegō,\* cf. tēctum  
vestimentum,\* *vestment*  
vultus

adventus,\* *advent*  
efferō,\* *elation*  
faveō, *fav-or*

50

absum,\* *absent*  
arripiō,\* cf. rapiō  
canō, cf. *cantus*  
memorābilis, *memorable*  
nāvigium,\* cf. nāvis

51

admiror, *admire*  
ēdō,\* *edit*  
fortitūdō, cf. fortiter  
gemitus  
sōlus,\* cf. sōlum  
superō,\* *in-super-able*  
vestis, cf. *vestimentum*

53

carrus, *carr-iage*  
crūdēlitās,\* cf. crūdēlis  
fluō, *flū-id*  
hortus, *horti-culture*  
impōnō, *impose*  
multum,\* cf. multō  
paulum\*  
suspēnsus, *suspense*

54

citrō\*  
cuneus, *cunei-form*  
dēferō\*  
gubernāculum, *gubernat*orial  
moveō,\* cf. commoveō  
pandō, *ex-pand*

sententia,\* cf. sentiō  
ulterior,\* *ulterior*

55

impediō,\* cf. *impedi*-menta  
liburnica\*  
occidēns, *occident*  
onerāria, *oner-ous*  
onustus\*  
tardē, *tardy*

56

abiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
inlidō (*col*)*lision*  
obstinātus, *obstinate*  
prōiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
resistō\*  
respōnsum, cf. respon-deō  
retineō,\* cf. teneō  
saevitia  
super, *super-impose*  
viginti\*

57

commemorō  
dēfigō (*pre*)*fix*  
necō,\* *inter-nec-ine*  
prōlābor (*re*)*lapse*  
religō, cf. *liga-ture*  
supinus, *supine*  
tenebrae

58

careō  
coniciō,\* cf. iaciō  
exitīālis  
finitimus\*  
frequēns, *requent*

magicus		tantopere, cf. tantum	perrumpō, cf. ērumpō
palam*		ūtor,* ut-ensil	repentīnus*
probō,* ap-proba-tion			
pulvis, pulver-ize			
	59	64	68
adsequor		adulēscēns, adolescent	callidus
circuitus, cf. circum		canis, canine	dēvorō
dubitō,* dubit-ate		dēfessus*	excitō,* excite
īnsequor*		exiguus*	lingua, lingu-ist
quidem*		quārtus,* quarter	nūper*
redintegrō (dis)inte-grate		65	praetereō, cf. eō
vītō,* ine-vit-able		aedificō, cf. aedēs	69
	60	caespes	aetās, et-ernal
clāmō, cf. clāmor		cōnsuēscō,* (de) suetude	carpō, ex-cerpt
cōferō,* conference		cōnsultō	prōsper(-erūs).
locuplēs		ducenti	prosperi-ty
	61	ēliciō, elicit	septem
accēdō,* accede		excidō, cf. occidō	70
bonus,* bonny		fera, fero-cious	accidō,* accident
quotiēns, quotient		frūstum,* frustum	argenteus, cf. argentum
	62	sēdēs, cf. sedeō	cōfēstīm*
errō,* error		timor,* cf. timeō	duodecim, duodecim-al
folium, foli-age		ūsus,* cf. ūtor	gubernātōr, cf gubernā-culum
quiēscō,* quiescent		vēnor, ven-isom	pōculum
somnus,* somno-lent		vīcīnus, vicini-ty	spoliō*
	63	66	71
auris, aur-ist		dēnique	vis*
cōfertus		diligenter,* cf. diligen-tia	avāritia, avarice
glōria, glory		incendium, cf. incendō	cōfirmō,* cf. affirm
manipulāris		misceō, pro-misc-uous	foris, per-for-ate
mors,* cf. morior		nātiō,* nation	praēmium,* premium
opportūnus		praeter,* preter-natural	queror, quer-ulous
ōrdō*		praetervehor, cf. vehō	
pariō*		reor,* rate (verb)	
	67	67	72
dīvidō		dīvidō	appetō, cf. petō
intus, cf. intrā		intus, cf. intrā	dīmicō*
mūtō,* per-muta-tion		mūtō,* per-muta-tion	percutiō, percussion
			umerus

73		79		86
absconditus, cf. condō adhaerēscō, adhere dēterreō, deter dētrūdō,* (in)trusion eōdem*		carcer, in- <i>carcer-ate</i> efficiō, effect negō, nega-tion potior*		ascendō,* <i>ascent</i> dēiciō,* cf. iaciō tertius,* <i>terti-ary</i>
praestō*		prīnceps, <i>princip-al</i> tolerō, tolerate		
secundus,* cf. secundum				
	74		80	87
incrēdibilis, <i>incredible</i> lūx,* cf. illūcēscō		claudō, * <i>se-clude</i> obliviscor, <i>obliv-ion</i> omnīnō, cf. omnis vel		aequus*, <i>equ-able</i> prōmunturium
	75		81	88
adstō, cf. stō circumeō,* cf. eō colloquium,* cf. loquor colloquor, cf. loquor ira, cf. irātus		amplius, <i>ample</i> suscipiō tribūtum		dēserō fidēs, cf. fidēlis similis*
	76		82	89
cōnspectus		clādēs integer, <i>integer</i> praesertim repente,* cf. repentinus		beneficium,* (bene + faciō) dēversōrium lignātiō referō, <i>refer</i>
ēruptiō, cf. ērumpō obscūrus, <i>obscuri-ty</i> trādūcō, cf. dūcō vigilia,* cf. vigilō				
	77		83	90
addūcō,* adduce perlegō, cf. lectern quīvis, cf. volō venia, <i>venial</i>		cōstantia, <i>constancy</i> existimō,* cf. estimate persevērō, <i>persevere</i> quīndecim		convertō* fūmus, <i>fume</i> horrendus, <i>hor-ror</i> incolō, cf. incola spērnō, <i>spurn</i>
	78		84	91
custōs,* cf. custōdiō decem, <i>decim-al</i> fōns, <i>fount</i> prōcurrō versor*, <i>con-versant</i>		cāsus,* <i>casu-al</i> dētrahō, <i>detract</i> dolor, <i>dolor-ous</i> pedetemptim quīnquāgintā quō* (conj.)		portō,* <i>port-er</i> spatiūm,* <i>spaci-ous</i> trāsportō,* <i>transport</i> valētūdō, <i>valetudin-arian</i> vinculum vīvus, cf. vīvō
			85	92
		ob*		coniūrātiō male, cf. malus
				93
				augeō, <i>aug-ment</i> emptiō, cf. emō

peregrinus  
reprimō, *repress*  
trigintā

94

iudicō, \* *judic-iary*  
praepōnō, *preposition*  
vagor, *vaga-bond*

95

gladius, \* *gladi-ator*  
imperō, \* cf. *imperātor*  
incertus, cf. certus  
ingredior, *ingress*  
perturbō, *perturb*  
quattuor  
septuāgintā  
suspicio

96

appōnō (ad + pōnō)  
civitās, \* cf. *civis*  
regredior

97

vertō, cf. *convertō*

98

amicitia, cf. *amicus*

99

concurrō, \* *concourse*

100

continēns, *continent*  
perfuga, cf. *perfugiō*  
speculator, *specula-tor*

101

eques, \* cf. *equus*  
noster \*

premō, \* cf. *reprimō*  
tot

102

cōnsulō, *consult*  
magnopere, cf. *magnus*  
ōratiō, \* *oration*  
subsidiū, \* *subsidy*  
ūniversi, \* *univers-al*

103

cēnseō  
disputō, *disputa-tion*  
quis\* (interrog.)  
uterque\*

104

cupidē, *cupidi-ty*  
medius, \* *medio-crity*  
nocturnus, cf. *nox* and  
noctū  
plēriquo\*  
prōnūntiō, *pronounce*

105

cohors\*  
dēscendō, cf. *ascendō*  
dispōnō, *dispose*  
inīguus, \* cf. *aequus*  
officium, \* *office*  
orbis, *orbit*  
prōvideō, *provide*  
quisque\*

106

auctōritās, *authority*  
octāvus, *octave*  
parcō, *parsi-mon*y  
rogō, *inter-roga-tion*  
trāgula

107

pāreō

108

dēmōnstrō, *demonstra-tion*  
doceō, \* *doc-tor*  
equitātus, \* cf. *eques*  
intereō, cf. *pereō*  
intermittō, *intermission*  
līberō, \* cf. *libertās*  
nōndum  
nōnnūlli\* (nōn + nūllī)  
opprimō, \* *oppress*  
peditātus, \* cf. *pēs*  
perpetuus, *perpetu-al*  
subsequor, *subsequent*

109

addō, *add-iton*  
cōsuētūdō, \* cf. cōn-suēscō  
fossa, *foss-il* (adj.)  
pridiē, cf. *diēs*  
ratīō, *ration-al*  
turris, \* *turr-et*

110

circumdō  
comprehendō, *compre-hend*  
differō (dis + ferō)  
populus, *popul-ar*  
septimus

111

commodus, cf. incom-modum  
ūndecimus

112		121		131
occurro, occur		refugiō, refuge		āvertō, avert
profectiō, cf. proficiscor				cōfodiō, cf. fossa
remittō,* remit				īdūs
	113	discessus, cf. discēdō		quasi, quasi (adj.)
cernō, dis-cern		practereā, cf. praeter		
pristinus, pristine		prōtinus		
	114	speciēs, speci-ous		
obsidiō, cf. obsideō			133	
quoniam				exitus, cf. exeō
	115			memor, cf. memoria
decimus, decim-al				septuāgēsimus
ēmittō, emit			134	
postridīē,* cf. pridiē				forum
prōducō, produce			135	
simulātiō,* cf. simulō				arcēssō
	116	plānitiēs		genus, genus
cōntiō			136	
nōnus				expeditus, cf. expediō
temeritās, cf. temerē				praetōrius
	117		137	
triduum, cf. trēs and diēs		dignitās, dignity		fīrmus, cf. firmō
tumultus, tumult				intereā, cf. interim
	118			Kalendae, calendar
pedes,* cf. pēs and pedi-				quadriduum, quadr-en-
tātus				nium
	119		139	
explicō, (im)plicate		negōtium, cf. negōtior		pācō, cf. pāx
metus		and ḫtiōsus (neg-		
	120	= nec, i.e. "not")	140	
cūr		perdūcō		
		pertineō, pertain		quīnquāgēsimus

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

**ā, ab, prep. with abl.**, by, at the hands of: from; from the vicinity of; from among (106); of, from (72, 81, 129). See also *aliēnus*, *pars*, *petō*, *repetō*, and *tergum*.

**abēō, -ire, -ii, -itum est**, go away, go, depart, leave.

**abhinc, adv.**, ago.

**abiciō, 3, -iēci, -iectus**, throw aside, throw overboard; throw (56); shoot (113).

**abripiō, 3, -ripūi, -reptus**, tear away, carry away; pull up, tear up.

**abscidō, 3, -cidī, -cisus**, cut off.

**absconditus, -a, -um, partic. as adj.**, hidden.

**absum, -esse, āfui**, be away, be distant (remote), be absent.

**ac**, see *atque*.

**accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est**, approach, draw near; come, advance (138); with *ad* and *acc.*, approach (115). Used impersonally, be added (106).

**accidō, 3, -cidī**, befall, happen, turn out, develop.

**acciō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus**, receive, greet; learn (80); sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).

**ācer, -cris, -cre**, fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.

**acerbus, -a, -um**, harsh, bitter; galling (137), outrageous (57).

**aciēs, -ēi, f.**, line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks; regular engagement (36, 40). *ex aciē*, from the field; *in primā aciē*, in the forefront of the fight.

**āriter, adv.**, fiercely, furiously; energetically, vigorously; with spirit, with vigor; relentlessly (41); eagerly, with eagerness (140).

**ad, prep. with acc.**, to, for; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52); against, upon, on; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before: until, till, up to. Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose. See also *accēdō*, *appellō* (-ere), *eō* (verb), *perfugiō*, *pertineō*, *perveniō*, *speciēs*, *ūnus*, and *usque*.

**ad . . . versus**, toward, in the direction of, for. With *acc.* of town name, shortened to *versus* (130).

**addō, 3, -didi, -ditus**, add; make mention in addition.

**addūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus**, lead on, bring on, bring; influence (119), rouse (135).

**adeō, adv.**, to such a degree, so.

**adeō, -ire, -ii, -itus**, visit, touch at (70); meet (135); run into, fall into (37).

**adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus**, bring, transport, bear; carry, take, deliver (letter): with *dat.*, inspire (in) (36).

- Pass.*, come; *with ad and acc.*, come to, reach (63, 76, 90).
- adhaerēscō**, 3, -haesī, -haesum est, stick; ground (of a boat).
- adhūc**, *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.
- adiuvō**, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus, help, aid, assist, support.
- admiror**, 1, view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.
- admoneō**, 2, -monūi, -monitus, remind.
- admoveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move up (84); *ignēs (-em)* **admovēre**, *with dat.*, set (apply) fire (to).
- adorior**, 4, -ortus sum, attack, assail; make an assault (86).
- adsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up with, overtake.
- adstō**, 1, -stitī, stand by, be in attendance.
- adsum**, -esse, -fui, be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).
- Aduātuci**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- adulēscēns**, -entis, *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.
- advena**, -ae, *c.*, stranger, newcomer.
- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).
- adversus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also *flūmen*.
- advesperāscit**, 3, -vesperāvit (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.
- aedēs**, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, house, home.
- aedificō**, 1, build, build up.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick, ill. *As noun*, *aegri*, -ōrum, *m.*, the sick.
- aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- aequus**, -a, -um, favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. **haud aequus**, no pleasant.
- aes** (*aeris, n.*) **aliēnum (-ī)**, debt.
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).
- Afer**, -fra, -frum, negro. *As noun*, **Āfrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.
- afficiō**, 3, -fēci, -fectus, attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).
- Africa**, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
- Africānus**, -a, -um, African, of Africa.
- ager**, -gri, *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).
- agmen**, -inis, *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. **primum agmen**, vanguard; **novissimum agmen**, rear guard.
- agō**, 3, ēgī, āctus, drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). **inter sē agere**, talk to one another; **vītam agere**, live.
- agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.
- Alexander**, -dri, *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedonia.
- alibī**, *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also *alius*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, another's, of another

(133); inclined away. *With ab* and *abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also *aes*.

**aliquamdiū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.) **aliquī** (*aliquis*), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (*aliquid*), *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.

**alius**, **alia**, **aliud**, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others (17, 139); **aliī alibī**, some in one place, some in another (136); **aliī in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque aliis**, and no other (45).

**Allobrogēs**, *-um, m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.

**alter**, *-era*, *-erum*, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

**altus**, *-a*, *-um*, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **alatum**, *-i, n.*, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).

**Amanus**, *-ī, m.*, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.

**Ambiorix**, *-īgis, m.*, the name of a Gallic chieftain.

**ambō**, *-ae*, *-ō* (*declined as duo*, except for the *ō*), both.

**ambulō**, *i*, *-āvi*, *-ātum est*, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).

**America**, *-ae, f.*, America.

**Americanus**, *-a*, *-um*, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americanus**, *-ī, m.*, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.

**amicitia**, *-ae, f.*, friendship, confidence.

**amicus**, *-a*, *-um*, friendly. *As noun*, **amicus**, *-ī, m.*, friend; *pl.*, **Amici**, *-ōrum, m.*, the Friends.

**āmittō**, *3*, *-misi*, *-missus*, lose.

**amō**, *i*, love, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns**, *-antis*, *with gen.*, loyal (to).

**amplector**, *3*, *-plexus sum*, embrace, accept.

**amplius**, *adv.*, *compar.*, further, more. **ancora**, *-ae, f.*, anchor.

**angustus**, *-a*, *-um*, narrow.

**animadvertisō**, *3*, *-verti*, *-versus*, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.

**animus**, *-ī, m.*, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habeō**.

**Annēius**, *-īl, m.*, (Marcus) Anneius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**annus**, *-ī, m.*, year.

**ante**, *adv.*, before, earlier, previously. See also *iam* and *paulō*.

**ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before; in front of, ahead of.

**anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.

**antequam**, *conj.*, before.

**Antiochēa**, *-ae, f.*, Antioch, a city of Syria.

**antiquitus**, *adv.*, in ancient times, in early times.

**Antistius**, -tī, *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.

**Antōnius**, -nī, *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Revolutionary War.

**Apamēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**aperiō**, 4, *aperui*, *apertus*, disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, *aper-tus*, -a, -um, open, unprotected.

**appellō**, 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.

**appellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, bring, steer, row. *ad litus appellere*, beach, run aground upon the shore.

**appetō**, 3, -petīv or -petīi, -petitus, attack, aim a thrust at.

**appōnō**, 3, -posui, -positus, set on, bring on, serve (food).

**appropinquō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).

**apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.

**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.

**Arabēs**, -um, *m.*, the Arabs.

**Arae** (-ārum, *f.*) **Alexandri**, the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).

**arbitror**, 1, think, believe, judge.

**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree.

**arceō**, 2, -uī, keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.

**arcēssō**, 3, -ivī, -itus, call in; call up (136).

**Ardeātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).

**ārdēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, blazing. **argenteus**, -a, -um, of silver, silver. **argentum**, -i, *n.*, silver, silver plate.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons.

**armātūs**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun*, **armāti**, -ōrum, *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.

**Arnoldius**, -dī, *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.

**Arpinētūs**, -ēi, *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).

**arripīō**, 3, -ripūi, -reptus, catch up, seize; rescue (106).

**ars**, artis, *f.*, business, profession. **ars magica**, black art, magic.

**ascendō**, 3, *ascendi*, *ascēnsus*, ascend, clamber up, scale; *with in and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).

**asciscō**, 3, *ascīvī*, *ascītus*, win over; adopt (67).

**Asia**, -ae, *f.*, (1) **Asia**; (2) **Asia Minor** (132, 138).

**Asiāticus**, -a, -um, Asiatic, of Asia.

**asper**, -era, -erum, rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).

**assēnsus**, -ūs, *m.*, approval.

**at**, *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.

**Atlanticus**, -a, -um, Atlantic.

**atque**, ac, *conj.*, and. See also *simul*.

**Atrebātēs**, -um, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**Attius**, -tī, *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.

**auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.

**audācia**, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).

**audācter**, *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.

**audāx**, -ācīs, *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).

**audeō**, 2, *ausus sum*, dare, venture.

- audiō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.
- augeō**, 2, auxī, auctus; *pass.*, increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126).
- auris**, -is, *f.*, ear.
- aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold.
- ausus**, -a, -um, see **audeō**.
- aut**, *conj.*, or; sometimes represented in English by "and." **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
- autem**, *conj.*, however, but, whereas; moreover, and.
- auxilium**, -ī, *n.*, aid, help, assistance, reënforcement, relief, protection. *Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reënforcements, help. *auxiliō esse*, with a second *dat.*, (freely) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also **ferō** and **veniō**.
- avāritia**, -ae, *f.*, greed, covetousness.
- āvertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus; *pass.*, turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus**, -a, -um, turned away (131).
- avis**, -is, *f.*, bird.
- bāca**, -ae, *f.*, berry.
- Bagrada**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a river of northern Africa.
- ballista**, -ae, *f.*; *pl.*, artillery.
- Balventius**, -tī, *m.*, (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard-bearer (106).
- barbarus**, -a, -um, barbarian. *As noun*, **barbarī**, -ōrum, *m.*, savages.
- Batāvī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Dutch.
- Bēcō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war, warfare; fighting (116). See also **gerō**.
- Bēnbrigius**, -gī, *m.*, (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer.
- bene**, *adv.*, well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also **gerō**, **habeō**, and **policeor**.
- beneficium**, -cī, *n.*, act of kindness, kindness, favor.
- Bibulus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.
- biduum**, -ī, *n.*, two days.
- Bithynia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- bonus**, -a, -um, good. *As noun*, **bona**, -ōrum, *n.*, goods, possessions, belongings, things.
- bōs**, *bovis*, *c.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, bōbus or būbus); *pl.*, cattle.
- Bostō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Boston.
- Braddoc**, -ocis, *m.*, (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.
- brevi**, *adv.*, shortly, (with) in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).
- Britannī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the English, the British, Englishmen.
- Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.
- Britannicus**, -a, -um, English, British, of the English. See also **vir**.
- Brütus**, -ī, *m.*, (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).
- Byzantium**, -tī, *n.*, the ancient name of Constantinople.
- C.**, abbreviation of **Cāius**, -āī, *m.* (Gaius).
- Cabot**, -otis, *m.*, (1) John Cabot,

- (2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.
- cadō**, *3, cecidī*, fall ; turn out, fall out (14).
- caedēs**, *-is, f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.
- caelum**, *-ī, n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.
- Caesar**, *-aris, m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).
- caespes**, *-itis, m.*, sod.
- callidus**, *-a, -um*, clever.
- Camillus**, *-ī, m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.
- Canada**, *-ae, f.*, Canada.
- Caninius**, *-nī, m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.
- canis**, *-is, c.*, dog.
- canō**, *3, cecinī*, play, sing.
- cantus**, *-ūs, m.*, singing, chanting, chant.
- capiō**, *3, cēpī, captus*, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner ; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. **pedibus captus**, lame; **vī capere**, take by storm.
- Capitōlium**, *-lī, n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.
- Cappadocia**, *-ae, f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- captivus**, *-i, m.*, prisoner, captive.
- caput**, *-itis, n.*, head ; capital. See also **damnō**.
- carcer**, *-eris, m.*, prison.
- careō**, *2, -uī*, with *abl.*, be without, lack; spare.
- Carletō**, *-ōnis, m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton,
- a British officer in the Revolutionary War.
- carō**, *carnis, f.*, meat, flesh.
- Carolaena**, *-ae, f.*, Carolina.
- carpō**, *3, carpsi, carpitus*, gather, pluck.
- carrus**, *-ī, m.*, wagon, cart.
- cārus**, *-a, -um*, beloved, precious, prized.
- casa**, *-ae, f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.
- Casca**, *-ae, m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.
- castellum**, *-ī, n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).
- Castor**, *-oris, m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- castra**, *-ōrum, n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also **faciō**, **habeō**, and **pōnō**.
- Castra (-ōrum, n.) Cornēlia (-ōrum)**, the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.
- cāsus**, *-ūs, m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, **cāsū**, by chance, as chance would have it.
- Catilina**, *-ae, m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.
- causa**, *-ae, f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion ; case (41). *Abl. causā, with gen. of the gerundive, gerund, or abstract noun*, for the purpose (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. **ob eam causam**, for that reason.

- cavus**, -a, -um, hollow.  
**cedidī**, see **cadō**.  
**cēdō**, 3, cessī, cessum est, fall back.  
 locō cēdere, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.  
**celebrō**, 1, celebrate.  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f., swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.  
**celeriter**, *adv.*, quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. *Superl.*, at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.  
**cēna**, -ae, f., dinner.  
**cēnō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), dine, take dinner.  
**cēnseō**, 2, -ūi, (*cēnsus*), express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m., captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).  
**cēpī**, see **capiō**.  
**Cercās**, -ae, m., (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.  
**cernō**, 3, (crēvī, certus), see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).  
**certē**, *adv.*, at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).  
**certus**, -a, -um, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also **cōgnōscō**, **faciō**, and **fiō**.  
**cēteri**, -ae, -a, the other, the rest (of). *As masc. noun*, the others, the rest, the other men.  
**Ceutronēs**, -um, m., the name of a people of northern Gaul.  
**cibus**, -i, m., food.  
**Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.  
**Cilicia**, -ae, f., the name of a district in Asia Minor.  
**Cimber**, -bri, m., see **Tillius**.
- circiter**, *adv.*, about.  
**circuitus**, -ūs, m., circuit, detour; circumference (110).  
**circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).  
**circumdō**, 1, -dedī, -datus, surround, girdle, encircle.  
**circumeō**, -ire, -ii, -itus, make the rounds of.  
**circumsistō**, 3, -stitī or -stetī, rally (gather, crowd) around.  
**circumstō**, 1, -stitī, stand about; surround, encircle.  
**circumveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).  
**citrō**, *adv.*, see **ultrō**.  
**cīvis**, -is, c., citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. *Pl.*, (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.  
**cīvitās**, -ātis, f. (*gen. pl.* -um or -ium), state, country.  
**clādēs**, -is, f., disaster.  
**clam**, *adv.*, secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.  
**clāmō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, cry out, call out.  
**clāmor**, -ōris, m., cry, shout.  
**clārus**, -a, -um, famous, prominent; loud (86).  
**classis**, -is, f., fleet.  
**claudō**, 3, **clausī**, **clausus**, close; shut up, confine (91).  
**Cn.**, *abbreviation of Cnaeus*, -i, m., (*Cnaeus*).  
**cōēgi**, coāctus, -a, -um, see **cōgō**.  
**coepī**, **coepisse**, **coemptus**, began, commenced; proceeded (130).  
**coerceō**, 2, -ercūi, -ercitus, hold in check.  
**cōgitō**, 1, think, imagine; *with dē and abl.*, have (any) thought (of) (51).

cōgnōscō, 3, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, get acquainted with, learn (of), fathom, find, observe; be informed, hear, gain information; get information of, gain (some) conception of (110); realize (93, 122); recognize (63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, become known, be known. certius cōgnōscere, get more definite information (115).

cōgō, 3, cōgī, cōactus, compel, force, oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126); collect, gather, bring together, call together, call in, get together; concentrate, crowd; muster, organize. cohors, -rtis, f., cohort. cohors prae-tōria, bodyguard.

cohortor, 1, rally, cheer on; urge, exhort. inter sē cohortārī, exhort one another (127).

collis, -is, m., hill.

collocō, 1, place, put, deposit; station, locate, quarter, settle; establish, build: arrange, place, lay (ambuscade); mount (artillery); pitch (camp); stack (arms). in acīe collocāre, form in line.

colloquium, -ī, n., conference, interview.

colloquor, 3, -locūtus sum, converse, talk, have an interview.

colōnia, -ae, f., colony.

colōnus, -ī, m., colonist, settler.

Columbus, -ī, m., (Christopher) Co-lumbus, the discoverer of America.

comes, -itis, c., companion, attendant, follower; hanger-on, minion (71).

*Pl.*, (one's) men (22, 74), (one's) fellows (86).

cōmitās, -ātis, f., kindness, courtesy.

cōmīter, adv., courteously (29), kindly (62); on friendly terms (23).

Commāgēnus, -a, -um, of Commagene (a northern district of Syria).

commemorō, 1, relate, rehearse, state, note.

committō, 3, -misi, -missus, join, consign. proelium committere, join battle, begin battle, engage in battle, offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle) take place; proeliō rem committere, risk an engagement, bring on an engagement.

commodus, -a, -um, easy, expeditious (130). As noun, commodum, -ī, n., well-being.

Commoris, -is, f. (*acc. sing. -im*), the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

commovēō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, stir (75), alarm (138). Partic., commōtus, -a, -um, disturbed, excited, upset, startled, alarmed; concerned, stirred up, wrought up; spurred on, moved. īrā commovērī, become angry.

commūnis, -is, -e, common.

compellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, drive, force. compleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētus, fill, fill up; swamp (4), choke (122); supply (118).

complūrēs, -ēs, -a, several, several of, some, (quite) a number of, quite a few, numerous; to a considerable number (139); several (in number) (90).

comportō, 1, bring together, gather together, get together, collect; get in, lay in (109).

comprehēndō, 3, -prehēndī, -prehē-sus, arrest (132); catch (fire).

cōnātus, -ūs, m., attempt.

concedō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, allow, grant, concede.

**concilium**, -i, n., council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).

**concurrō**, 3, -currī, -cursum est, rush (together), run. *inter sē concurre-* rere, charge upon one another (117). **condicō**, -ōnis, f., terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).

**condō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).

**conducō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, hire, engage.

**cōfērō**, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, bring together (117). *sē cōfērre*, betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.

**cōfertus**, -a, -um, partic. as adj., dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).

**cōfēstīm**, adv., at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.

**cōficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.

**cōfirmō**, 1, assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).

**cōfodiō**, 3, -fōdī, -fōssus, pierce, slay.

**coniciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, discharge, hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). *in fugam con-* icere, put to flight, rout.

**coniungō**, 3, -iūnxi, -iūnctus, join. *sē coniungere*, join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).

**coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, f., conspiracy.

**cōnor**, 1, try, attempt, endeavor.

**cōnsēndō**, 3, -scendi, -scēnsus, climb

up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).

**cōsequor**, 3, -secūtūs sum, catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).

**cōsērvō**, 1, preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).

**cōnsidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).

**cōnsilium**, -li, n., plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.*, course (135). See also mūtō.

**cōsistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). *in orbem cōsistere*, form in a circle.

**cōsōlor**, 1, comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).

**cōspectus**, -üs, m., sight, view.

**cōspiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectus, see, catch sight of; look on (87).

**cōstantia**, -ae, f., firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).

**cōstituō**, 3, -stitūi, -stitūtus, decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).

**cōsuēscō**, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus); perf. (*with force of present*), be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); *translated impersonally*, be (one's) custom.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, practice, custom, policy ; the ordinary (133).

**cōsulō**, 3, -sului, (-sultus), take measures, make provision, look out.

**cōsultō**, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.

**cōsūmō**, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, use up : eat, eat up; destroy; spend, pass (time). **ignī cōsūmēre**, burn.

**contendō**, 3, -tendī, (-tentus), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).

**continēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, **continēns**, -entis, *f.* (*sc. terra*), mainland (100, 101).

**contineō**, 2, -tinui, -tentus, confine, coop up, restrain.

**cōtiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, address ; assembly, meeting.

**contrā**, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).

**contulī**, see **cōnferō**.

**contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.

**conveniō**, 4, -vēni, -ventus, meet, interview, have interview with, see ; come together, gather, assemble.

**convertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). **sē con-**verte, turn, give attention (90).

**convocō**, 1, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.

**coorior**, 4, -ortus sum, arise, come up, spring up ; close in (106).

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army ; (one's) following (138).

**Coriolānus**, -i, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.

**Cornēlius**, -a, -um, see **Castra Cornēlia**.

**Cornivallis**, -is, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.

**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.

**cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.

**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**Crassus**, -i, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**crēdō**, 3, crēdī, crēditus, believe, think.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.

**crūdēlis**, -is, -e, cruel, savage.

**crūdēlitās**, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.

**cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody.

**Cūba**, -ae, *f.*, Cuba.

**cum**, *conj.*, (*time and circumstance*) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10) : (*cause*) since, inasmuch as, as: (*concession*) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.*

**cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also;

**cum primum**, as soon as, when . . . first.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also **habeō** (*sēcum*), **simul**, and **ūnā**.

**cuneus**, -i, *m.*, wedge, stake.

**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.

**cūr**, *adv.*, why, on account of which.

**Cūriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.

**cūrō**, 1, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47) : care for, have regard for (91).

**currō**, 3, cucurri, cursum est, run,

rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.*, course, stretch.

**custódia**, -ae, *f.*, custody. *Pl.*, guards, watch, pickets.

**custódiō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, guard, watch. **memoriā custódire**, remember.

**custōs**, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, sentinel.

**Cybistra**, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**D.**, abbreviation of **Decimus**, -ī, *m.* **damnō**, 1, condemn. **capitis damnāre**, condemn to death.

**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning, of, with reference to; down from, from.

**decem**, indeclinable *adj.*, ten.

**decimus**, -a, -um, tenth.

**dedī**, see **dō**.

**dēditiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender. See also **veniō**.

**dēdō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, give up, surrender. *Partic. as noun*, **dēditi**, -ōrum, *m.*, surrendered men, prisoners. **sē dēdere**, surrender, give one's self up, capitulate.

**dēducō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth, transport, conduct, escort, take, bring, lead; withdraw, lead away, call away, recall; draw down (131). **dēfendō**, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend, protect.

**dēfēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, defense.

**dēferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bear down (56), carry, bear, bring; report. *Pass.*, be carried, drift.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, weary, tired out, worn out.

**dēficiō**, 3, -fēcī, (-fectus), give out, fail, run low.

**dēfigō**, 3, -fixī, -fixus, fix, plant, set up.

**dēiciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, hurl down, hurl back (86); tear down, destroy (99). *Partic.*, **dēiectus**, -a, -um, with *abl.*, (*freely*) disappointed (in).

**deinde**, *adv.*, then, next, later, subsequently.

**Dēiotarus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a native king who favored Roman rule in Asia Minor.

**dēlātus**, -a, -um, see **dēferō**.

**dēleō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy, make away with; demolish, raze.

**dēligō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select, pick out, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as adj.*, **dēlectus**, -a, -um, chosen (34).

**dēmittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, lower. *Partic. as adj.*, **dēmissus**, -a, -um, downcast, crestfallen; **animō dēmissus**, disheartened, discouraged.

**sē animō dēmittere**, lose heart (83). **dēmōnstrō**, 1, point out, mention; explain (108).

**dēmum**, *adv.*, at length, finally, at last. See also **iam**.

**dēnique**, *adv.*, finally, in fine.

**dēnuō**, *adv.*, anew, again, once more, a second time.

**dēpōnō**, 3, -posui, -positus, put down (load), lay down, surrender (office), give up (hope).

**dēscendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsum est, descend, come down, charge down (121).

**dēserō**, 3, -serui, -sertus, desert, leave, leave in the lurch.

**dēsistō**, 3, -stitī, stitum est, desist, cease. **proeliō dēsistere**, cease fighting, withdraw.

**dēsum**, deesse, **dēfui**, be wanting (84), be disloyal (14).

**dēterreō**, 2, -terrui, -territus, keep off, scare away; intimidate.

**dētrahō**, 3, -trāxi, -tractus, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

**dētrimentum**, -ī, n., disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

**dētrūdō**, 3, -trūsi, -trūsus, push off, shove off.

**dētuli**, see **dēferō**.

**deus**, -ī, m. (dat. and abl. pl., **deis**, diūs, or **dīs**), god.

**dēversōrium**, -ī, n., inn, tavern.

**dēvius**, -a, -um, out of the way.

**dēvorō**, 1, devour.

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, right. *As noun*, **dextra**, -ae, f. (sc. **manus**), right hand.

**dicō**, 3, **dixi**, dictus, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). **male dicere**, swear, curse.

**diēs**, -ēi, m. and f., day. **in diēs**, from day to day.

**differō**, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, scatter; put off, postpone.

**difficilis**, -is, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

**dignitās**, -ātis, f., reputation, standing.

**diligenter**, adv., diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

**diligentia**, -ae, f., care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

**dimicō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

**dimittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, let go, release; let slip (through one's fin-

gers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

**discēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With ab or ex and abl.*, leave, desert. **ab armis discēdere**, discard (one's) arms (110); **inferior discēdere**, be beaten (39).

**discessus**, -ūs, m., withdrawal, recall.

**discō**, 3, didici, learn, acquire.

**dispōnō**, 3, -posui, -positus, arrange, station.

**disputō**, -āvī, -ātum est, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

**diū**, adv., long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. **neque . . .**

**diūtius**, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); **nōn diūtius**, no longer. See also **iam**.

**diversus**, -a, -um, different, various.

**dīvidō**, 3, -visī, -visus, divide, split up.

**dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, datus, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 129); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). **in custōdiam dare**, have arrested, arrest; **in fugam dare**, put to flight, rout, disperse; **operam dare**, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); **poenās dare**, (pay the penalty), be punished; **sē somnō dare**, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; **vēla dare**, set sail.

**doceō**, 2, -ui, doctus, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

**dolor**, -ōris, m., distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

**dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master, owner.

**Domitius**, -tī, *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.

**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī**, at home; **domō**, from home (see also ēgredior); **domum**, homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

**dōnec**, *conj.*, until.

**dōnum**, -ī, *n.*, gift, present.

**dubitō**, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, hesitate.

**dubius**, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.

*As noun, dubium*, -ī, *n.*, doubt (126).

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, two hundred.

**dūcō**, *3*, dūxī, *ductus*, lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). in **mātrimōniūm**

**dūcere**, marry, take in marriage.

**dum**, *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

**duo**, *duae*, **duo**, two, the two.

**duodecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

**dux**, *ducis*, *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

**ē, ex**, *prep. with abl.*, (*separation, source*), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also *aciēs*, *discēdō*, and *pars*.

**Eborācopolis**, -is, *f.*, Yorktown.

**Eborācum** (-ī, *n.*) **Novum** (-ī), New York (City).

**ecfrēnātē**, *adv.*, wildly.

**edō**, *3*, ēdī, ēsus, eat.

**ēdō**, *3*, -dīdī, -ditus, utter, give forth, give voice to.

**efferō**, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

**efficiō**, *3*, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

**effugiō**, *3*, -fūgī, escape, make (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

**ēgī**, see *agō*.

**ego**, *meī*, *I*.

**ēgredior**, *3*, -gressus sum, go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō** **ēgredī**, leave home.

**ēlātus**, -a, -um, see *efferō*.

**Eleutherocilicēs**, -um, *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

**ēliciō**, *3*, -licui, -licitus, lure forth, lure.

**Elizabēta**, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.

**ēlūdō**, *3*, -lūsī, -lūsus, outwit, cheat, get the better of.

**ēmigrō**, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, emigrate, move away.

**ēmittō**, *3*, -misi, -missus, send forth, send out.

**ēmō**, *3*, ēmī, emptus, buy, purchase; buy up (91).

**emptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, buying; *with gen.*, traffic (in).

**enim**, *conj.*, for.

**eō**, *adv.*, thither, to that place, there. **eō magis**, (on this account the more), all the more; **eō . . . unde**, to a point where.

**eō**, īrē, īī, itum est, go, advance. *With ad and acc.*, go to meet (107).

**ēdem**, *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination) (117).

**Epiphanēa**, -ae, f., the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**eques**, -itis, m., horseman, knight.  
*Pl.*, cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).

**equitātus**, -ūs, m., cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.

**equus**, -i, m., horse. See also **vehō**.

**Erana**, -ae f., the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**ēripiō**, 3, -ripūi, -reptus, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.*, take away (from) (71).

**errō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, wander (about), stray.

**ērumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (-ruptus), burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).

**ēruptiō**, -ōnis, f., sally, sortie.

**et**, *conj.*, and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and. **etiam**, *adv.*, even, also, too. See also **quīn etiam** and **sōlum**.

**etsī**, *conj.*, although, even though.

**Eurōpa**, -ae, f., Europe.

**ēvādō**, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est, get out, escape; emerge (82).

**ēveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, turn out, go, proceed.

**ēventus**, -ūs, m., outcome, sequel; net result (110).

**ex**, see **ē**.

**exāctus**, -a, -um, see **exigō**.

**excidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, cut down.

**expīciō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).

**excitō**, 1, rouse, rouse up.

**exeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum est, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.

**exercitus**, -ūs, m., army, force, command.

**exigō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.*, **exāctus**, -a, -um, completed, ended.

**exiguus**, -a, -um, small, weak; faint (sound).

**existimō**, 1, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.

**exitīālis**, -is, -e, deadly, fatal.

**exitus**, -ūs, m., means of egress; solution.

**expediō**, 4, -ivī, -ītus, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).

**expeditus**, -a, -um, *partic.* as *adj.*, unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun*, **expediti**, -ōrum, m., light-armed troops.

**expellō**, 3, -pūlī, -pulsus, drive out; dispel (doubt).

**explicō**, 1, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, deploy, arrange.

**explōrātor**, -ōris, m., scout, explorer, frontiersman.

**explōrō**, 1, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.

**expugnō**, 1, take by storm, storm, capture, take.

**exsiliō**, 4, -silūi, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).

**exsilium**, -i, n., exile.

**exspectō**, 1, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).

**exstruō**, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, construct, build.

**extinguō**, 3, **extinxī**, **extinctus**, extinguish, put out.

**extrā**, *prep.* *with acc.*, outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

**Faber**, -bri, *m.*, (Captain John) Smith.  
**Fabius**, -bi, *m.*, (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.

**facile**, *adv.*, easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.  
**facinus**, -oris, *n.*, crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.

**faciō**, 3, **fēcī**, **factus**, do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make: carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). **castra facere**, encamp; **certiōrem** (-ēs) facere, inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also **fiō**); **imperium facere**, charge; **iniūriās facere**, with *dat.*, illtreat (4); **iter facere**, travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); **stipendia facere**, serve (in army). See also **fiō**.

**facultās**, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity, chance.  
**Faesulānus**, -a, -um, of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). *As noun*, **Faesulānus**, -i, *m.*, (a) citizen of Faesulae.

**fallō**, 3, **fefellī**, falsus, disappoint. *Partic. as adj.*, falsus, -a, -um, false, fictitious (137).

**famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. See also **necō**.

**faveō**, 2, **fāvī**, **fatum est**, with *dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with).

**fefellī**, see **fallō**.

**fēlīciter**, *adv.*, successfully, well, prosperously. **nec fēlīciter**, and unsuccessfully. See (**rem**) **gerō**.  
**fenestra**, -ae, *f.*, window.

**fera**, -ae, *f.*, wild animal (creature, beast).

**Ferdinandus**, -i, *m.*, Ferdinand, king of Spain.

**ferē**, *adv.*, about, nearly, almost.

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). *Pass.*, be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. **auxiliū ferre**, bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; with *dat.*, support, help; **molestē ferre**, be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).

**fidēlis**, -is, -e, faithful, loyal, reliable.

**fidēs**, -ei, *f.*, credence; loyalty (120).  
**filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

**filius**, -li, *m.*, son; the younger, junior (5).

**finis**, -is, *m.*, end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.

**finitimus**, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby, adjacent. *As noun*, **finitimi**, -ōrum, *m.*, adjacent peoples (138).

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. **certior** (-ēs) **fieri**, be informed, learn. See also **faciō**.

**firmō**, *i.*, secure, strengthen.

**firmus**, *-a*, *-um*, strong.

**Flāminīnus**, *-i*, *m.*, (Titus Quintius)

Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.

**fleō**, *2*, **fleū**, **fletū** est, weep, cry.

**Flōrida**, *-ae*, *f.*, Florida.

**flōs**, **flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.

**fluctus**, *-ūs*, *m.*, wave.

**flūmen**, *-inis*, *n.*, river, stream, current (73). **adversō flūmine**, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); **secundō flūmine**, with the current, downstream.

**fluō**, *3*, **fluū**, (*fluxus*), flow.

**folium**, *-i*, *n.*, leaf.

**fōns**, **fontis**, *m.*, spring.

**foris**, *-is*, *m.*; *pl.*, door.

**forte**, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).

**fortis**, *-is*, *-e*, brave, courageous, heroic.

**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).

**fortitūdō**, *-inis*, *f.*, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).

**fortūna**, *-ae*, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, well-being. *As proper name*, **Fortūna**, *-ae*, *f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.

**forum**, *-i*, *n.*, market place. *In particular*, the market place at Rome, the Forum.

**fossa**, *-ae*, *f.*, ditch, moat.

**frangō**, *3*, **frēgi**, **fractus**, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).

**frāter**, *-tris*, *m.*, brother.

**frequēns**, *-entis*, *adj.*; *pl.*, in large numbers.

**fretum**, *-i*, *n.*, strait, channel, sound.

**frigidus**, *-a*, *-um*, icy.

**frigus**, *-oris*, *n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).

**frūmentum**, *-i*, *n.*, grain, corn.

**frūstrā**, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.

**frūstum**, *-i*, *n.*, bit, piece.

**fuga**, *-ae*, *f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also **coniciō** and **dō**.

**fugiō**, *3*, **fugī**, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, **fugiēns**, *-entis*, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).

**fūmus**, *-i*, *m.*, smoke.

**Gabinius**, *-ni*, *m.*, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

**Gallia**, *-ae*, *f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).

**Gallicus**, *-a*, *-um*, French; Gallic (126 ff.).

**Gallus**, *-a*, *-um*, Gallic. *As noun*, **Gallus**, *-i*, *m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.

**gaudeō**, *2*, **gāvisus sum**, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).

**gaza**, *-ae*, *f.*, treasure.

**gemitus**, *-ūs*, *m.*, groan.

**gēns**, **gentis**, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.

**genus**, *-eris*, *n.*, class; birth, family (136).

**Germānī**, *-ōrum*, *m.*, the Germans.

**gerō**, *3*, **gessī**, **gestus**, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. **bellum gerere**, wage war, fight, carry on

war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. **rem bene** (*fēliciter*)

**gerere**, be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; **sē gerere**, behave, act, comport (one's) self.

See also **rēs**.

**glaciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, ice.

**gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword.

**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, luster, renown.

**glōrior**, *i.*, boast.

**Gorgia**, -ae, *f.*, Georgia.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek.

**grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor (89). *Pl.*, thanks.

**grātus**, -a, -um, acceptable, satisfactory, attractive; grateful (45).

**gravis**, -is, -e, heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137): serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).

**graviter**, *adv.*, seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.

**Grudiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**gubernācūlum**, -ī, *n.*, steering oar. *Pl.*, steering gear, tiller, helm.

**gubernātōr**, -ōris, *m.*, helmsman, pilot.

**habeō**, 2, -uī, -itus, have, hold, keep; hold, regard; get, make (135):

deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). **bene sē habēre**, have a good time; **castra habēre**, remain encamped; **in animō habēre**, intend, plan; think of, consider (doing a thing); **in incertō habēre**,

be undecided; **rēs ita sē habēre**, matters stand thus (53); **sēcum habēre**, harbor (132).

**habitō**, *i.*, -āvī, (-ātus), live, dwell, be located.

**Hadrūmētūm**, -ī, *n.*, the name of a town of northern Africa.

**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, the name of a famous Carthaginian general.

**harēna**, -ae, *f.*, sand.

**haud**, *adv.*, by no means, not very, not. See also **aequus**, **invītus**, **libenter**, **longinquus**, **longus**, **magnus**, and **procul**.

**Henrīcūs**, -ī, *m.*, Henry, king of Portugal.

**herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass.

**hīberna**, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.

**hīc**, *adv.*, here.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hoc**, this, that; *abl.*, **hāc** (sc. *vīā*), by this route. *As noun*, he, they, this, these; *neut.*, this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).

**hiemō**, *i.*, -āvī, -ātūm est, pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.

**hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter, winter time, winter season.

**Hispāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Spanish, the Spaniards.

**Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

**Hispāniēnsis**, -is, -e, of Spain. *As noun*, **Hispāniēnsis**, -is, *m.*, (a) native of Spain.

**homō**, -inis, *c.*, man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.*, people, mankind (23).

**honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor; deference (81).

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.

**Horātiūs**, -tī, *m.*, Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.

**horrendus**, -a, -um, awful, frightful.

**hortor**, *i.*, urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden.

**hostis**, -is, *m.*, enemy.

**huc**, *adv.*, to this place, thither.

**Hudsōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer ; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

**humus**, -i, *f.*, ground ; **humī**, on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

**Īconium**, -nī, *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**idem**, *eadem*, **idem**, the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun*, the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.). **idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted ; favorable (wind).

**Idūs**, -uum, *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

**igitur**, *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

**ignis**, -is, *m.*, fire, light, camp fire. *Pl.* flames. See also **cōnsūmō**.

**ignōminia**, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unexplored, strange.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, that, this, the. *As noun*, he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

**illūcēscō**, 3, -lūxī, dawn.

**impedimenta**, -ōrum, *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

**impediō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, **impeditus**, -a, -um, hampered, weighed down, at a dis-

advantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

**imperium**, -rī, *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

**imperō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with dat. case, if any*, give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

**impetrō**, 1, win, gain, secure ; buy (41).

**impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

**impōnō**, 3, -posūi, -positus, *with dat. or in and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

**imus**, -a, -um, see **inferior**.

**in**, *prep.* ; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of ; within, in the midst of, among ; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of ; against, upon, on, at, among ; toward, for ; out upon (51).

**incendium**, -dī, *n.*, fire, conflagration.

**incendō**, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus, burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

**incertus**, -a, -um, irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun*, **incertum**, -i, *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see **habēd**).

**incitō**, 1, spur on, stir up. **sē incitāre**, work one's self up (48).

**incola**, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant, native.

**incolō**, 3, -colui, inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

**incolumis**, -is, -e, safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; scot free.

- incommōdum**, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.
- incrēdibilis**, -is, -e, fabulous, astonishing.
- inde**, *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.
- Indiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Indiana.
- indicō**, 3, -dixī, -dictus, declare (war).
- Indus**, -a, -um, Indian. *As noun*, Indus, -ī, *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.
- inferior**, -iōr, -ius, inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, imus, -a, -um, (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also discēdō.
- inferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, inflict; with *dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). iniūriās inferre, with *dat.*, maltreat.
- infēstus**, -a, -um, threatening, opposing.
- ingredior**, 3, -gressus sum, enter, effect an entrance.
- inimīcus**, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun*, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.
- iniūquus**, -a, -um, unfavorable.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, iniūriā, unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also faciō and inferō.
- iniussū**, *abl. of defective noun, with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).
- inlidō**, 3, -lisi, -lisus, dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.
- inmittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. **tēlum inmittere**, fire.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.
- inquam**, —, -quiī, say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.
- inrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (*ruptus*), break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.
- insequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow. **vestigiis insequī**, follow the trail.
- insidiae**, -ārum, *f.*, ambuscade, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also lateō.
- instar**, *indeclinable noun, with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.
- instruō**, 3, -strūxi, -strūctus, draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. **insula Longa**, Long Island.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, untouched. *As noun*, integrī, -ōrum, *m.*, fresh troops.
- intellegō**, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.
- intempestus**, -a, -um, *lit.*, unseasonable. See nox.
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also agō, cohortor, and concurrō.
- intercipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; capture.
- interdiū**, by day, by daylight.
- interdūm**, *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).
- interēā**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
- interēō**, -ire, -iī, perish, be killed.
- interficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,

kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead.

**interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

**intermittō**, *3*, -misi, -missus, check; leave between (126).

**interpōnō**, *3*, -posui, -positus, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

**intervallum**, *-i*, *n.*, distance.

**intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

**intrō**, *i*, enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

**intus**, *adv.*, within, inside; on board (70).

**inveniō**, *4*, -vēni, -ventus, find, find out, discover.

**invisus**, -a, -um, odious; hated (48, 75).

**invītus**, -a, -um, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

**ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

**ira**, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath.

**irātus**, -a, -um, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

**is**, ea, id, this, the, that. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.*, it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those

things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

**Isabella**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

**iste**, ista, istud, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

**ita**, *adv.*, thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

**Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

**itaque**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.

**iter**, itineris, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). *in itinere*, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

**iaceō**, *2*, -ui, lie, lie neglected (131).

*Partic. as adj.*, iacēns, -entis, prostrate.

**iaciō**, *3*, iēci, iactus, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

**Iacsō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

**iam**, *adv.*, now, already, at length. **iam ante**, previously; **iam dēmūm**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**, now for a long time, long since; **iam pridē**, long since, long before.

**Iāniculum**, *-i*, *n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber. **Iasper**, -erī, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

**Iuba**, -ae, *m.*, the name of an African king.

**iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.

**iūdicō**, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.

**Iūnius**, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**Iūnō**, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.

**iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, law, rules (132); court (45) : *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Abl. as adv.*, **iūre**, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.

**iūvenis**, -is, *m.*, young man, youth, young fellow; with *adj. force*, youthful (25).

**iuvō**, 1, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.

**K.**, abbreviation of **Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).

**L.**, abbreviation of **Lūcius**, -cī, *m.*

**Labiēnus**, -ī, *m.*, (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

**labor**, -ōris, *m.*, hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).

**labōrō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).

**lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, tear.

**lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

**laetus**, -a, -um, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).

**Lāodicēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**largior**, 4, -ītus sum, give freely, sacrifice.

**Lārisa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town in Greece.

**latebrae**, -ārum, *f.*, hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). in **latebris**, in hiding (32).

**lateō**, 2, -uī, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. in **īnsidiis latēre**, lie in wait.

**latus**, -eris, *n.*, flank (of army).

**lātus**, -a, -um, see **ferō**.

**laudō**, 1, praise, commend.

**lectus**, -ī, *m.*, bed, couch.

**lēgātus**, -ī, *m.*, captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).

**legiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.

**lēniter**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

**Lexingtō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.

**libenter**, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.

**liberi**, -ōrum, *m.*, children.

**Liberia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Africa.

**liberō**, 1, free, relieve.

**libertās**, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom, emancipation.

**liburnica**, -ae, *f.*, sloop, cutter, brigantine.

**licet**, 2, **licuit** or **licitum est**, *impersonal verb*, be permitted.

**lignātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, felling (of) timber.

**Lima**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town of South America.

**lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

**littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter (of the alphabet).  
*Pl.*, letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

**litus**, -oris, *n.*, coast, shore.

**Lívius**, -vī, *m.*, (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

**locuplēs**, -ētis, *adj.*, rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

**locus**, -i, *m.* (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*), place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.*, district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). **omnibus locis**, everywhere. See also cēdō and nātūra.

**locūtus**, -a, -um, see loquor.

**Londinium** (-nī, *n.*) **Novum** (-ī), New London, a town in Connecticut.

**longē**, *adv.*, far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; *with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv.*, (by) far, much.

**longinquus**, -a, -um, distant, remote, far away, at a distance. **haud longinquus**, at no great distance.

**longus**, -a, -um, long. **haud longus**, no great (distance); **longum est**, it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also īnsula and nāvis.

**loquor**, 3, **locūtus sum**, talk, speak, converse; state (126); *with cum and abl.*, talk (to).

**Lovisiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Louisiana.

**Lūcānius**, -nī, *m.*, (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**lūdō**, 3, **lūsi**, **lūsum est**, play, sport.

**lūna**, -ae, *f.*, moon.

**Lūsitānia**, -ae, *f.*, the ancient name of Portugal.

**lūx**, **lūcis**, *f.*, light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prīma lūx**, early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

**Lycāonia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district in Asia Minor.

**M.**, abbreviation of **Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*

**maestus**, -a, -um, sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

**magicus**, -a, -um, magic, magical. See also ars.

**magis**, *adv., compar.*, more (129); see also eō (*adv.*). *Superl.*, **maximē**, particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree: sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an *adj.* or *adv.*

**magister**, -trī, *m.*, captain. **puerōrum magister**, tutor, school teacher.

**magnopere**, *adv.*, earnestly; unreasonably (103).

**magnus**, -a, -um, great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive: abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). **haud magnus**, no great; **nōn magnus**, of no great size. See also iter.

- Compar.*, **maior**, -or, -us, (all the) greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun*, **maiōrēs**, -um, m., fathers (13).
- Superl.*, **maximus**, -a, -um, extreme, utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slighter).
- maior**, -or, -us, see **magnus**.
- male**, *adv.*, not fully (140). See also **dīcō**.
- mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui**, prefer, choose.
- malus**, -a, -um, wicked, evil, unprincipled, vile. *As noun*, **malum**, -i, n., evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.
- māne**, in the morning, on the morrow, next morning; early in the morning (49).
- maneō**, 2, **mānsi**, **mānsum est**, remain, stay, tarry, live.
- manipulāris**, -is, -e, of the rank and file. *As noun*, **manipulāris**, -is, m., soldier of the rank and file, private; *pl.*, men.
- Mānlius**, -li, m., (1) Marcus Manlius, a Roman who defended the Capitol against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Manlius, lieutenant to Catiline.
- manus**, -ūs, f., hand; band, company, detachment, force.
- Mārcius**, -ci, m., Marcius (Rufus), an officer in Curio's army.
- Mārcus**, -i, m., Marcus.
- mare**, -is, n., sea, ocean; the high seas (92).
- Marta**, -ae, f., Martha.
- Mārtius**, -a, -um, of March.
- māter**, -tris, f., mother.
- mātrimōnium**, -i, n., marriage. See also **dūcō**.
- mātrōna**, -ae, f., lady.
- mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, soon; speedily (94).
- Maurī**, -ōrum, m., the Moors.
- maximē**, see **magis**.
- maximus**, -a, -um, see **magnus**.
- Mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, Mediterranean.
- medius**, -a, -um, middle (of), center of. See also **nox**.
- mēlior**, see **bonus**.
- memor**, -oris, *adj.*, with *gen.*, with a thought (of), thinking (of), remembering.
- memorābilis**, -is, -e, noteworthy, remarkable.
- memoria**, -ae, f., memory, remembrance. See also **custōdiō** and **teneō**.
- mēnsis**, -is, m., month.
- mentior**, 4, -itus sum, make up (a) story, fabricate.
- meridiēs**, -ēi, m., midday, noon (129); the south (40, 43, 77).
- metus**, -ūs, m., fear (122); thought of danger (119).
- meus**, -a, -um, my; my own (138); on my part (140).
- Miantōnimō**, -ōnis, m., the name of an Indian chief.
- mīles**, -itis, m., soldier, common soldier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl.*, men, privates. See also **tribūnus**.
- mīlle**, *indeclinable adj.*; *pl.*, (*noun*) **mīlia**, -ium, n., thousand. **mīle** passūs, mile; **mīlia passuum**, miles.
- minimē**, see **minus**.
- minimus**, see **parvus**.
- minor**, -or, -us, see **parvus**.
- minus**, *adv.*, *compar.*, less; not very (80). *Superl.* **minimē**, not at all, by no means; no (87).

**mīrus, -a, -um**, wonderful, strange.  
**mīscēō, 2, -ui**, **mīstus or mixtus**, mingle.

**mīser, -era, -erūm**, wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun*, poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.

**mittō, 3, mīsī, missus**, send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun*, **missī, -ōrum, m., messengers**, *lit.* those sent (109).

**modo, adv.**, just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). **modo . . . modo**, at one time . . . at another. See also **sī**.

**modus, -ī, m.**, manner, fashion, way, means, chance. **eius modī**, of this sort; **nūllō modō**, not at all (83); **quōd modō**, thus.

**molestē, adv.**, with irritation; see **ferō**.

**moneō, 2, -ui, -itus**, warn, advise, inform (49).

**mōns, montis, m.**, mountain, eminence, height.

**mora, -ae, f.**, delay, hesitation. **sine morā**, instantly (64).

**morbus, -ī, m.**, disease, illness, sickness.

**moribundus, -a, -um**, dying, at the point of death.

**mōrīor, 3, mortuus sum**, die. *Partic. (and adj.) mortuus, -a, -um*, having died, dead: *as noun*, **mōrīus, -ī, m.**, dead man; *pl.*, the dead.

**moror, 1**, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).

**mōrs, mortis, f.**, death, dying, execution.

**mōs, mōris, m.**, custom. *Pl.*, ways (28), character (72).

**moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus**, move; break (camp).

**mox, adv.**, soon, shortly, quickly.

**Mūcius, -ī, m.**, (Gaius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.

**mulier, -eris, f.**, woman.

**multitūdō, -inis, f.**, throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).

**multō, adv.**, (by) much, (by) far.

**multum, adv.**, much, greatly. *Superl.*, **plūrīmum**, very frequently (135).

**multus, -a, -um**, much. *Pl.*, many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun*, many, many persons, many people; *neut.*, many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.*, **plūs, plūris, neut.** (*noun*), more (88): *pl.*, **plūrēs, -ēs, -a**, more, several (131); *as noun*, more (122).

*Superl.*, **plūrimī, -ae, -a**, very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of. **mūniō, 4, -īvī, -ītus**, intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.*, **mūnītus, -a, -um**, strong, (strongly) fortified.

**mūnītiō, -ōnis, f.**, fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.*, fortifications; siege works (115, 123).

**mūrus, -ī, m.**, wall, (stone) fence (55).

**mūtō, 1**, change. **cōnsilium mūtāre**, change (one's) mind.

**nam, conj.**, for.

**nanciscor, 3, nactus sum**, find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense*, have (119).

**nārrō, 1**, relate, narrate, tell (of).

**nāscor, 3, nātus sum**, be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe.

natō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, float.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, nātūrā, naturally (134). nātūra locī, natural situation (41).

nātus, -a, -um, see nāscor.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, deck hand. *Pl.*, crew.

nāvigium, -i, *n.*, vessel.

nāvigō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11); be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. nāvis longa, warship, man-of-war. See also solvō.

-ne, sign of a question.

nē, *conj.*; (*purpose*) so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; (*after recūsāre*) that (132). nē quis, so that no one (54, 57); nē qua, so that no (102); nē quid, so that . . . not . . . anything (47); nē ullus, that no (84).

nē . . . quidem, not even; not . . . either (93).

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, essential, needed, needful.

necō, *i.*, put to death, kill. fame necāre, starve to death.

necopināns, -antis, *adj.*, off (one's) guard.

negō, *i.*, -āvī, (-ātus), declare that . . . not, say "no."

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader.

negōtiōr, *i.*, trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).

negōtiūm, -tī, *n.*, business, commission.

nēmō, defective noun, *m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by nūllius and nūllō.*

neque, nec, *conj.*, and . . . not, nor; when followed by enim or (sometimes) by vērō, not. neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). See also alius, diū, fēliciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ullus, umquam, and volō.

Nervius, -vī, *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).

nesciō, 4, -scīvī, not understand, not know, be ignorant of.

nihil, indeclinable noun, nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).

Nīna, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

nisi, *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nōlō, *i.*, -āvī, -ātum est, swim, float.

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).

nocturnus, -a, -um, during the night, night (*adj.*).

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; honor (35).

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnnūlli, -ae, -a, a number of. *As noun*, some.

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.

nōster, -tra, -trum, our. *As noun*, nostri, -ōrum, *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops, forces, force).

- nōtus, -a, -um, partic. as adj.**, known.  
**Noveborācēnsis, -is, -e, of New York,**  
 New York (*adj.*).  
**novus, -a, -um, new, strange, odd, unexpected;** revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. (*ali*)quid novī (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit. of new*). *Superl.*, last, hindermost (127). See also *agmen* and *rēs*.  
**nox, noctis, f., night, darkness, night-fall.** *Abl. as adv.*, nocte, under cover of the darkness (130). **media nox**, midnight; **nocte intempestā**, at dead of night.  
**nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, without clothing.**  
**nūllus, -a, -um, no, not a; nūllō, (as masc. noun), supplying the lacking abl. of nēmō, no one, none** (39, 58, 82). See also *modus* and *pars*.  
**numerus, -ī, m., number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount** (66). **quōrum in numerō, among whom.**  
**Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidians; with adj. force, Numidian** (117).  
**numquam, adv., never. nōn numquam**, sometimes (63).  
**nunc, adv., now, to-day.**  
**nūntiō, i, announce, report, send word; with dat., inform.**  
**nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.**  
**nūper, adv., lately, just before.**  
**ob, prep. with acc., on account of.** See also *causa* and *rēs*.  
**oblīviscor, 3, oblitus sum, forget;** *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).  
**obscūrus, -a, -um, dim; lowly** (79).  
**obses, -idias, c., hostage.**  
**obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.**  
**obsidiō, -ōnis, f., siege.**  
**obstinātus, -a, -um, determined, dogged.**  
**obtineō, 2, -tinui, -tentus, hold, have, enjoy** (34). **rēgnum obtinēre, rule.**  
**occāsiō, -ōnis, f., opportunity, chance.**  
**occidēns, -entis, m., the west.**  
**occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.**  
**occupō, i, occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill** (89). *Partic. as adj.*, **occupātus, -a, -um, guarded** (133): busy, busied; interested (129).  
**occurrō, 3, -curri, -cursum est, with dat., meet, head off.**  
**octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.**  
**Octōber, -bris, -bre, of October.**  
**oculus, -ī, m., eye.**  
**officium, -ī, n., duty, task; respect** (131).  
**ōlim, adv., once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.**  
**omnīnō, adv., altogether, entirely.**  
**omnis, -is, -e, all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any** (113, 129). *As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also *locus* and *sciō*.  
**onerāria, -ae, f., transport, merchant vessel.**  
**onustus, -a, -um, laden, loaded.**

**opera**, -ae, *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also dō.

**oppidāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

**oppidūm**, -i, *n.*, town, city.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, auspicious, favorable, opportune.

**opprimō**, 3, -pressī, -pressus, crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

**oppugnō**, 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

**optimus**, -a, -um, see bonus.

**opus**, -eris, *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est**, there is need (46).

**ōratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

**orbis**, -is, *m.*, circle. See also cōsistō.

**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

**ōrō**, 1, beg.

**ostendō**, 3, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere**, appear, show one's self.

**ōtiōsus**, -a, -um, at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

**P.**, abbreviation of Pūblius, -li, *m.*  
**pācō**, 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus**, -a, -um, subdued, submissive.

**Paelignus**, -i, *m.*, see Fabius.

**paene**, *adv.*, almost.

**palam**, *adv.*, openly, in full view;

frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade.

**pandō**, 3, **pandi**, *passus*, spread. *Partic. as adj.*, **passus**, -a, -um, full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

**parcō**, 3, **pepercī**, *with dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

**pārēō**, 2, -ūi, obey, comply; *with dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

**pariō**, 3, **peperī**, **partus**, win, gain.

**parō**, 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; *with infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan.

*Partic. as adj.*, **parātus**, -a, -um, in readiness, ready.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte**, in that quarter, on that side; **ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides; **in omnis partēs**, in every direction; **in alterā parte . . . in alterā**, on the one hand . . . on the other; **in utramque partem**, pro and con (103); **nūllam in partem**, no (sign be made) one way or the other (119); **quāscumque in partēs**, whithersoever; **unā ex parte**, on one side.

**Parthī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians.

**parvus**, -a, -um, small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*

**minor**, -or, -us, less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68). *Superl.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, very small, (but) the slightest (91). **passus**, -ūs, *m.*, pace. See mille.

**passus**, -a, -um, see **pandō** and **patior**.

**patefaciō**, 3, -fēci, -factus, throw

- open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as adj.*, **patefactus**, -a, -um, open (64).
- pater**, -tris, *m.*, father.
- patiōr**, 3, **passus sum**, allow, permit, suffer; endure, bear, suffer.
- patria**, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country; ancestral domain (75), rightful country (93).
- paucī**, -ae, -a, few, a few (of), the few. *As masc. noun*, a few, a mere handful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few (things, words, questions).
- paulatim**, *adv.*, slowly, by slow degrees, gradually.
- paulō**, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. **paulō ante**, a little before (earlier), shortly before, a little while before; a little while ago (69); **paulō post**, a little later, shortly afterward, a short time afterward.
- paulum**, *adv.*, a little, a little way, a little (short) distance; a short time.
- pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace, state of peace.
- Pecsuot**, -otis, *m.*, the name of an Indian killed by Miles Standish.
- pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money, funds; pay (94), bribe (94). See also **solvō**.
- pedes**, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, infantry, footmen, foot soldiers.
- pedetemptim**, *adv.*, gradually, little by little, warily, slowly.
- peditatūs**, -ūs, *m.*, foot soldiery, infantry, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force of infantry (138).
- Pennsylvānia**, -ae, *f.*, Pennsylvania.
- per**, *prep. with acc.*; (*of space*) through, across, over, along; around in (*the grass*), on (*the sea*); (*of time*) through, for; (*agency*) through (*translated freely "from" or "by"*). See also **simulatīo** and **tenebrae**.
- percutiō**, 3, -cussī, -cussus, strike, strike down.
- perducō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, conduct. *Pass.*, be protracted, last (129).
- peregrīnus**, -i, *m.*, foreigner.
- pereō**, -ire, -iī, perish, die, lose (one's) life, be killed, fall.
- perficiō**, 3, -fēci, -fectus, complete, finish, carry to completion, carry out; do, perform; construct, build.
- perfidia**, -ae, *f.*, treachery, treason.
- perfuga**, -ae, *c.*, renegade, traitor; *with adj. force*, deserting (123).
- perfugiō**, 3, -fūgi, desert, flee; *with ad and acc.*, take refuge (with) (111).
- periculōsus**, -a, -um, perilous, beset with dangers.
- periculum**, -i, *n.*, danger, peril, risk; crisis (104), dangerous state (112).
- perlegō**, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, read through.
- permōtus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, startled, surprised, taken aback, confused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken, worried, concerned; incensed (66), inspired (83), shamed (120).
- perpaucī**, -ae, -a, very few, a very few.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, everlasting, ever troublesome (139). *in perpetuum (as neut. noun)*, for all time (108).
- perrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through, break down, destroy.
- persevērō**, 1, -āvī, -ātūm est, persist, remain firm; *with infin.*, continue (to do a thing), persist (in doing a thing).
- persuādeō**, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est, *with dat.*, make it agreeable (to), persuade, induce.
- perterritus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, terrified, thoroughly frightened, in great fear, panic-stricken, thrown

- into a panic, in terror, scared out of  
(one's) wits; in their terror (129). **pertinācia**, -ae, f., obstinacy, persist-  
ence.
- pertineō**, 2, -tinui, with ad and acc., be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).
- perturbō**, 1, throw into confusion, dis-  
concert.
- perveniō**, 4, -vēni, -ventum est, arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: with ad and acc., reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): with in and acc., reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenire** in potestātem, with gen., surrender (to).
- pēs**, pedis, m., foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).
- pessimus**, -a, -um, see **malus**.
- petō**, 3, -ivī, -itus, look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): with ab and abl., request (132).
- Petrēius**, -ēi, m., (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.
- Petrosidius**, -dī, m., (Lucius) Petro-  
sidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.
- Philadelphia**, -ae, f., Philadelphia.
- Philippus**, -i, m., (King) Philip, an Indian chief.
- Philomēlium**, -lī, n., the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- pīlum**, -i, n., javelin.
- Pindenissus** (or -um), -i, m. or n., the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- Pinta**, -ae, f., the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- pirāta**, -ae, m., pirate, robber.
- piscis**, -is, m., fish.
- plānē**, adv., clearly, full well; fully, utterly.
- plānitiēs**, -ēi, f., plain, level ground.
- plēriquē**, plēraequē, plēraque, most of, the majority of. As masc. noun, the majority, the most part, nearly all.
- plūrimi**, -ae, -a, see **multus**.
- plūrimum**, see **multum**.
- plūs**, plūris, n., see **multus**.
- Pōcahonta**, -ae, f., the name of an Indian princess.
- pōculum**, -i, n., cup.
- poena**, -ae, f., penalty. See also dō and **repetō**.
- Poenī**, -ōrum, m., the Carthaginians.
- pollicor**, 2, pollicitus sum, promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicēri**, make fair promises (135).
- Pollūx**, -ūcis, m., the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- Pompēiānī**, -ōrum, m., the Pompeians (i.e. adherents of Pompey).
- Pompēiūs**, -ēi, m.; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).
- Pomptinus**, -i, m., (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- pōnō**, 3, posui, positus, place, put, station, fix; establish, build: with in and abl., stake (upon) (112). Partic. as adj., positus, -a, -um, located, situated. **castra pōnere**, encamp, pitch camp.
- Pontiac**, -acis, m., the name of an Indian chief.

- populus**, -i, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).  
**porrigō**, 3, -rēxi, -rēctus, hold out,  
 stretch out; display.  
**Porsinna**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a king  
 of Etruria.  
**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.  
**portō**, 1, carry, bring; accommodate  
 (91).  
**portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.  
**possum**, posse, potuī, be able (can,  
 etc.).  
**post**, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See  
 also *paulō* and *postquam*.  
**post**, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than;  
 behind. See also *tergum*.  
**posteā**, *adv.*, afterward, later, there-  
 after.  
**(posterus)**, -a, -um, next, following.  
*As noun*, posteri, -ōrum, *m.*, de-  
 scendants, posterity.  
**postquam** or **post** . . . **quam**, *conj.*,  
 after, when; when at length (64),  
 as soon as (82).  
**postrēmō**, *adv.*, finally, at last, at  
 length, in the end.  
**postridiē**, *adv.*, the next day, on the  
 following day. *postridiē eius diēi*,  
 on the following day (123).  
**postulō**, 1, demand, require, ask.  
**potestās**, -ātis, *f.*, power, control, pos-  
 session; opportunity (109, 121).  
 See also *perveniō*.  
**potior**, 4, -itus sum, *with abl.*, gain,  
 get, secure; capture, gather in  
 (117), get (take) possession of; oc-  
 cupy (129).  
**praeda**, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.  
**praedium**, -i, *n.*, estate, plantation,  
 ranch, farm.  
**praefectus**, -i, *m.*, commander; cap-  
 tain (70, 74, 81), general (123),  
 officer (70, 125), governor (4).  
**praemittō**, 3, -misī, -missus, send  
 ahead, send forward.  
**praeium**, -i, *n.*, reward, present,  
 bonus, largess; bribe (71).  
**praeoccupō**, 1, forestall, anticipate;  
 reach first (125).  
**praepōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with*  
*dat.*, put in charge (of).  
**praesēns**, -entis, see *praesum*.  
**praesertim**, *adv.*, especially.  
**praesidium**, -i, *n.*, garrison, guard,  
 escort; guard(ing) (138).  
**praestō**, 1, -stītī, -stitus, show, ex-  
 hibit, manifest, display; perform  
 (105); guarantee (107).  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, be in charge, be  
 in command; *with dat.*, be in charge  
 (of), be in command (of). *Partic.*  
**praesēns**, -entis, present (135); *as*  
*adj.*, instant (death).  
**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, be-  
 yond.  
**praetereā**, *adv.*, besides, furthermore,  
 in addition.  
**praetereō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, pass by;  
*perf. tense*, be past, be gone (131).  
**praetervehor**, 3, -vectus sum, sail  
 past.  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, of the com-  
 mander; see *cohors*.  
**premō**, 3, pressī, pressus, press hard,  
 harass, beset.  
**pridē**, see *iam*.  
**pridiē**, *adv.* (*sometimes as prep. with*  
*an acc.*), (on) the day before.  
**primō**, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in  
 the beginning.  
**primum**, *adv.*, first. See also *cum*  
*(conj.)* and *ubi* (*conj.*).  
**primus**, -a, -um, first, chief, foremost,  
 leading; the beginning of, the first  
 part of; early, earliest; the very

(88). **in primis** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs**, **agmen**, and **lūx**.

**prīnceps**, -*ipis*, *m.*, chief citizen. *Pl.*, chief men, leading men.

**Prīssilla**, -*ae*, *f.*, Priscilla.

**prīstinus**, -*a*, -*um*, former, old-time; past (133).

**prius**, *adv.*, first, previously.

**priusquam**, *conj.*, before; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of; as, for (10, 16, 83); for, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63); before, in front of (107).

**probō**, *i.*, approve.

**procūl**, *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance; in the distance (94, 113); from a distance (87, 125).

**haud procūl**, at no great distance, near at hand, near by.  
**prōcurrō**, *3*, -*cucurrī* or -*currī*, -*cursum est*, run forward, charge.

**prōdō**, *3*, -*didī*, -*ditus*, betray; disclose (52).

**prōdūcō**, *3*, -*dūxi*, -*ductus*, bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.

**proelium**, -*i*, *n.*, battle, fight, fighting (scene of) battle; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō**.

**profectiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.*, departure.

**proficiscor**, *3*, **profectus sum**, set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed; depart (27), slip away (62).

**prōgredior**, *3*, -*gressus sum*, advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead; go forth (75); march, travel; sail, coast; push out (2), venture (3, 6).

**prōiciō**, *3*, -*ieci*, -*iectus*, throw (out), hurl; throw over (98); lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).

**prōlābor**, *3*, -*lapsus sum*, fall forward, slip down (57).

**prōmunturium**, -*i*, *n.*, promontory, cape.

**prōnūtiō**, *i*, announce, make announcement.

**prope**, *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).

**prope**, *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.

**properō**, *i*, -*āvi*, -*ātum est*, hasten, hurry, scurry; *with infin.*, make haste (78).

**propinquus**, -*a*, -*um*, near-by, near.

*As noun*, **propinquī**, -*ōrum*, *m.*, relatives.

**prōpōndō**, *3*, -*posui*, -*positus*, set forth, explain.

**propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; through (fear).

**prōsper** (or -*erūs*), -*era*, -*erūm*, good (fortune, luck).

**prōspiciō**, *3*, -*spēxi*, (-*spectus*), look forth, look out.

**prōtinus**, *adv.*, straight on; forth-with (129).

**prōvideō**, *2*, -*vīdī*, -*vīsus*, foresee, determine; look after, look out for (136).

**prōvincia**, -*ae*, *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.

**proximus**, -*a*, -*um*, next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by; next, following, next succeeding; that (night) (119).

**Prūsia** (or -*ās*), -*ae*, *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, public, official (112). See also **rēs**.

**puella**, -ae, f., girl, maiden, maid.

**puer**, -erī, m., boy, lad; slave (133).

See also **magister**.

**pueritia**, -ae, f., boyhood, childhood.

**pugna**, -ae, f., battle.

**pugnō**, i, -āvi, -ātum est, fight, war; keep up (the) fight (106).

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrūm, beautiful, fair, pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).

**pulvis**, -eris, m., dust (90, 118); powder.

**putō**, i, think, believe.

**Q.**, abbreviation of **Quintus**, -ī, m.

**quadrīdūm**, -ī, n., four days, a period (space) of four days.

**quaerō**, 3, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, seek, search, look for, hunt for; secure, get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).

**quaestus**, -ūs, m., profit, gain.

**quam**, conj. and adv., than, rather than; with the superl. of adjs. and advs., as . . . as possible.

**quamquam**, conj., although.

**quandō**, adv., see **sī**.

**quantus**, -a, -um, how great; what, what a. As noun, **quantum**, -ī, n., how much? See also **tantus**.

**quārē**, conj., therefore, wherefore, (and) accordingly, (and) so, (and) consequently; because of which, on which account, (and) on this account, as a consequence of which; whereat, whereupon.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, fourth.

**quasi**, conj., with partic., as if, pretending (to).

**quattuor**, indeclinable adj., four.

**-que**, conj., and; and (so) (139).

**queror**, 3, **questus sum**, complain.

**qui**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., who, which (gen., whose). With antecedent implied: masc. pl., (some) who, (people) who, (those) who (90, 93, 120, 129, 140); neut. sing., (a thing) which (37), (one) which (131); neut. pl., (the things) which (110).

At the beginning of a sentence: as noun, who, which, he, she, it, this, they, these; neut., this thing, these things, this: as adj., which, what, this. (When a personal or demonstrative pronoun is used to render a relative, it is often desirable to supply a conjunction, such as "and," "but," etc.) See also **modus**. For the corresponding interrog. and indef. pron., see **quis**.

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (quid-dam), a certain; a (3); a sort of (137). Pl., some, certain, certain of. As masc. noun, a certain one; pl., certain, some (people).

**quidem**, adv., indeed; at any rate (93). See also **nē** . . . **quidem**.

**quiēscō**, 3, **quiēvī**, (quiētus), rest, repose; take (one's) nap (71).

**somnō** **quiēscere**, be sunk in sleep. **quīn etiam**, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact, nay more, even; why (not interrog.).

**Quinctius**, -ī, m., see **Flāminīnus**.

**quīndecim**, indeclinable adj., fifteen.

**quīnquāgēsimus**, -a, -um, fiftieth.

**quīnquāgintā**, indeclinable adj., fifty.

**quīnque**, indeclinable adj., five.

**Quintus**, -ī, m., Quintus.

(quis) **qui**, **quae**, (quid) **quod**, indef. pron., any one, any, etc. (see **nē** and **sī**).

(quis) **qui**, **quae**, (quid) **quod**, in-

*terrog.* *pron.*, who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).

**quisquam**, —, *quicquam*, in negative clauses, any one, anything. *nec quisquam*, and no one; *nec quicquam*, and . . . nothing.

**quisque**, *quaque*, *quodque* (*quidque*): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).

**quivis**, *quaevis*, *quodvis* (*quidvis*): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).

**quōd**, *adv.*, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.

**quōd**, *conj.*, in order that, so that.

**quod**, *conj.*, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).

**quondam**, *adv.*, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).

**quoniam**, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as.

**quoque**, *adv.* and *conj.*, also, too, as well; even.

**quotiens**, *conj.*, as often as.

**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch.

**rapiō**, 3, *rapuī*, *raptus*, seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).

**rārus**, -a, -um, (*in pl.*), scattered, far apart, few.

**ratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, manner, way.

**ratus**, -a, -um, see *reor*.

**Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, see *Caninius*.

**recipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. *in nāvigium recipere*, get (take) on board: *sē recipere*, with-

draw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with in and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).

**recūsō**, 1, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).

**rēdeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum est, return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with ad and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). **domum redire**, arrive home (5).

**redintegrō**, 1, renew.

**redūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with ad and acc.*, restore (to) (93).

**refērō**, -ferre, *rettulī*, -lātus, carry (back); repay (favor).

**refugīō**, 3, -fūgi, flee for protection; retire in haste (129).

**rēgīna**, -ae, *f.*, queen.

**regiō**, -ōnis, *f.*; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.

**rēgnūm**, -ī, *n.*, sway, control; kingdom, realm. See also *obtineō*.

**regredior**, 3, -gressus sum, return, withdraw.

**religiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).

**religō**, 1, fasten, bind.

**relinquō**, 3, -līquī, -lictus, leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, *relictus*, -a, -um, remaining (88).

**reliquiae**, -ārum, *f.*, remnants.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

remaining, the rest of; the following (109); *as noun*, the others, those remaining, the remnant, the remainder, the rest. *reliquus esse*, be left, remain (115, 125). *remittō*, 3, -misi, -missus, send back; subtract (114).

*reor*, 2, *ratus sum*, expect (136).

*Partic.*, *ratus*, -a, -um, thinking, believing.

*repente*, *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a sudden.

*repentinus*, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected.

*reperiō*, 4, *repperī*, *repertus*, find, discover.

*repetō*, 3, -petivī, -petitus, exact (*lit.* demand back). *poenās repetere*, with ab and abl., discipline, punish. *reportō*, 1, carry back, bring back. *repperī*, see *reperiō*.

*reprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus, stop, suppress, check.

*rēs*, *rei*, *f.*, thing, things, action; affair, business, circumstance, fact, happening, matter, matters; act (121), casualty (106), concession (50), development (103); engagement, the fighting (129, 136); errand (14), event (42), incident (88), issue (72), observation (48), occurrence (71), performance (58), plan (94), point (129), proceeding (69), result (99), situation (108, 114), transaction (118), turn (of events) (92, 125), undertaking (40), venture (100). *Pl.*, business (139), cause (126), demonstration (121), means (127), things, appliances (122). *haec rēs or quae rēs* (*all cases, sing. and pl.*), this; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, and so, accord-

ingly; *rēs gestae*, exploits; *rē vērā*, in very truth; *rēs novae*, insurrection, revolution (25); *rēs pūblica*, commonwealth, state, (one's) country (60). See also *committō* and *gerō*.

*resistō*, 3, -stiti, -stitum est, with dat. case, if any, resist, offer resistance, oppose, make opposition; hold (one's) own, stand (one's) ground, make a stand (136); go (against), hold out (against), hold (one's) ground (against).

*respondō*, 2, -spondi, -spōnsum est, answer, reply; make answer, send answer; declare.

*respōnsum*, -i, *n.*, answer, reply.

*retineō*, 2, -tinui, -tentus, hold back; hold down (91); keep (101); maintain, hold fast to (113); save (133).

*rettuli*, see *referō*.

*revocō*, 1, recall, call back.

*rēx*, *rēgis*, *m.*, king, chief, ruler.

*Rhēnus*, -i, *m.*, the ancient name of the Rhine.

*rideō*, 2, *rīsī*, *(risus)*, laugh, smile.

*ripa*, -ae, *f.*, (river) bank, bank (of river).

*rīvus*, -i, *m.*, stream; brook (82).

*rogō*, 1, ask, beg, request.

*Rōma*, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

*Rōmānus*, -a, -um, Roman. *As noun*, *Rōmānī*, -ōrum, *m.*, the Romans. See also *vir*.

*Rūfus*, -i, *m.*, see *Mārcius*.

*rursus*, *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.

*Sabinus*, -i, *m.*, (Quintus) Sabinus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

*Saburra*, -ae, *m.*, the name of a gen-

- eral in the army of the African king Juba.
- sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *c.*, priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).
- saepe**, *adv.*, often, oftentimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.*, over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).
- saevitia**, -ae, *f.*, brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.
- sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
- sagum**, -ī, *n.*, cloak.
- saltem**, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
- saltō**, i., -āvī, -ātūm est, dance.
- salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130). *saluti esse*, with a second dat., save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).
- Samarobriva**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of northern Gaul.
- Sanga**, -ae, *m.*, see *Fabius*.
- Santa** (-ae) **Maria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- Saratōga**, -ae, *f.*, Saratoga.
- satis**, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also *sciō*.
- Savanna**, -ae, *f.*, Savannah.
- saxum**, -ī, *n.*, rock, cliff.
- scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, open boat, row-boat.
- sclerātus**, -a, -um, rascally, wicked, villainous.
- scilicet**, *adv.*, of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).
- sciō**, 4, **scivī**, scītus, know, understand. nec satis scīre, and be somewhat undecided (104); **omnia scire**, know all (about the subject) (31).
- scribō**, 3, **scripsi**, scriptus, write; state (114).
- sē**, sēsē, see *sui*.
- secundum**, *prep. with acc.*, along.
- secundus**, -a, -um, following; favorable (131). See also *flūmen*.
- secūris**, -is, *f.*, battle-ax, ax, tomahawk.
- secūtus**, -a, -um, see *sequor*.
- sed**, *conj.*, but; resuming, now (136).
- sēdecim**, indeclinable *adj.*, sixteen.
- sedēdō**, 2, **sēdī**, sessum est, take a seat, sit.
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.*, seat (of war) (82). *Pl.*, location, abode (65); district, habitat (66).
- semel**, *adv.*, once. **semel atque iterum** or **semel iterumque**, time and again, several times.
- semper**, *adv.*, always, ever, at all times.
- Semprōnia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).
- senex**, **senis**, *m.*, old man; with *adj.* force, aged.
- sententia**, -ae, *f.*, view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.
- sentiō**, 4, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).
- septem**, indeclinable *adj.*, seven.
- September**, -bris, -bre, of September.
- septimus**, -a, -um, seventh. **septimus quinquāgēsimus**, fifty-seventh.
- septuāgēsimus**, -a, -um, seventieth.
- septuāgintā**, indeclinable *adj.*, seventy.
- Seypyra**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

**sequor**, 3, **secūtus sum**, follow. **vestigiis sequi**, follow the trail (61).

**servō**, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep. **servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave; helper (74).

**sex**, *indeclinable adj.*, six.

**sexāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.

**Sextilis**, -īs, -e, of August.

**sī**, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance, on the chance that, in the hope that; (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only, provided (that); **sī quandō**, if at any time, whenever; **sī qui** (*noun*), if any; **sī quid novī**, if anything new.

**sic**, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in this way, through (by) this means; in such a way (54, 133).

**sīca**, -ae, *f.*, dagger.

**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

**Siculus**, -ī, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.

**sicut**, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example. **signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; watchword, countersign (99). *Pl.*, standards.

**silentium**, -ī, *n.*, silence, quietness (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently, in silence.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, wood, grove.

**similis**, -īs, -e, similar; *with dat.*, similar (to), resembling, like.

**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously; at one and the same time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as soon as (124); **simul cum**, together with (139).

**simulatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense, show. *per simulatiōnem*, under pretense (122).

**simulō**, 1, pretend, make believe, make it appear (49); affect, pretend (135). **sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. See also **mora** and **timor**.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one, isolated (66).

**socius**, -a, -um, allied (137). *As noun*, **socius**, -ī, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner (98). *Pl.*, allies, friends; participants (135); friendly natives (140).

**soleō**, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed, be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of doing a thing); *imperf. and perf. tenses*, used. *Translated impersonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's) custom.

**sōlum**, *adv.*, only. **nōn sōlum** . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, alone, in solitude; unaided, single-handed; in single combat (72).

**solvō**, 3, **solvī**, **solūtus**, unfetter (91); pay (debt). **nāvem (-ēs) solvere**, cast off, set sail; **pecūniām solvere**, defray expense (89).

**somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap. See also **dō**.

**sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound, noise.

**sōpitūs**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, asleep. **spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, room; period (120), respite (129).

**speciēs**, -ēi, *f.*, show; display, parade, pretense, guise. *ad speciem*, as a blind (122).

**spectō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātūs), look, verge, lie.

**speculator**, 1, spy, view.

**spernō**, 3, **sprēvī**, **sprētus**, scorn, disregard.

**spērō**, 1, hope, hope for.

**spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); expectation (128), anticipation (135); chance (125), prospect (126), promise (111).

**spoliō**, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pillage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).

**sprētus**, -a, -um, see **spernō**.

**Spurinna, -ae, m.**, the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.

**Standisius, -ī, m.**, (Miles) Standish. **statim, adv.**, at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).

**statuō, 3, statui, statūtus**, set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.

**stipendium, -ī, n.**, pay. *Pl.*, military service; see *faciō*.

**stō, 1, stetī**, stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).

**strēnuus, -a, -um**, active, energetic, sturdy.

**strepitus, -ūs, m.**, bustle, noise, confusion.

**sub, prep. with abl.**, under, beneath; with acc., toward.

**subito, adv.**, suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.

**sublātus, -a, -um**, see *tollō*.

**subsequor, 3, -secūtus sum**, follow rapidly; follow (124).

**subsidiū, -ī, n.**, support, reënforcement, relief, help. See also *veniō*. **sui, sibi**, himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: *sē* with *cōfērō*, *coniungō*, *dēdō*, *dēmittō*, *dō*, *gerō*, *habeō*, *ostendō*, *recipiō*, *tegō*, and *teneō*: inter *sē* with *agō*, *cohortor*, and *concurrō*: *sēcum* with *habeō*.

**sum, esse, fuī**, be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also *auxilium*, *salūs*, and *ūsus*.

**summus, -a, -um**, see *superior*

**sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptus**, take, pro-

cure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).

**super, prep. with acc.**, above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).

**superbia, -ae, f.**, haughtiness, arrogance.

**superior, -ior, -ius, superior**, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. *Superl.*, *suprēmus, -a, -um*, supreme, and *summus, -a, -um*, greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).

**superō, 1, surpass, excel, prevail** (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.

**supinūs, -a, -um**, on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).

**suprā, adv.**, above.

**suprēmus, -a, -um**, see *superior*.

**surgō, 3, surrēxi, surrēctum est**, rise up, arise, rise.

**suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus**, undertake.

**suspēnsus, -a, -um**, *partic. as adj.*, anxious.

**suspīciō, -ōnis, f.**, suspicion; impression (127).

**suspīcor, 1**, suspect, think.

**sustineō, 2, -tinū, -tentus**, withstand, sustain, break the force of (118); stay (hunger).

**sustulī**, see *tollō*.

**suus, -a, -um**, his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc.

*As noun*, *sui, -ōrum, m.*, his men

(followers, following, forces, force); their men (followers): his own people (16); their own lines (121).

**Synnada**, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

**Syria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Asia.

**T.**, abbreviation of **Titus**, -ī, *m.*

**tabernācūlum**, -ī, *n.*, tent, wigwam.  
**tacitus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, silent, motionless; quiet, in silence.

**Taeconderōga**, -ae, *f.*, Ticonderoga.

**Tallapūsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tallapoosa, a river of Alabama.

**tam**, *adv.*, so.

**tamen**, *adv. and conj.*, however, but, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still.  
nec **tamen**, and yet . . . not.

**tantopere**, *adv.*, so greatly.

**tantum**, *adv.*, merely, only, but.

**tantus**, -a, -um, so great, so large, such, such great, such large; so base, such base (41), so grievous (34), so remarkable (110), so severe (33), such (absolute) (86), such serious (134); overwhelming (134).  
**quantō . . . tantō**, (*with two comparatives*) the . . . the; **tantus . . . quantus**, such . . . as.

**tardē**, *adv.*, slowly, with little speed.

**Taurus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of Asia Minor.

**Tebarānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of Asia Minor.

**tēctum**, -ī, *n.*, roof; structure, building.

**Tecumseh**, -ae, *m.*, Tecumseh, an Indian chief.

**tegō**, 3, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, cover, conceal; bury (64). **sē tegere**, get under cover.

**tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon; shaft shot, bullet. *Pl.*, ammunition (59, 83, 92). See also *inmittō* and *interficiō*.

**temerē**, *adv.*, rashly, hastily, incautiously, lightly (82).

**temeritās**, -ātis, *f.*, rashness, rash action, hasty act, incautiousness, folly.  
**tempestās**, -ātis, *f.*, storm.

**templum**, -ī, *n.*, temple (71); church.  
**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time, period, season, occasion, hour (100); circumstances (139). *Pl.*, days, times; ages (45).

**tenebrae**, -ārūm, *f.*, darkness. **per tenebrās**, in the darkness (gloom).

**teneō**, 2, -uī, hold, occupy, garrison; have (128); keep to (139). **memoriā tenēre**, remember (34); **sē tenēre**, remain constantly (133).

**tergum**, -ī, *n.*, back. **ā tergō** and **post tergum**, in the rear. See also **vertō**.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land; country, land, district; the ground; dirt, earth (110).

**terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus, frighten, intimidate, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.*, **territus**, -a, -um, frightened, terror-stricken, alarmed, abashed.

**tertius**, -a, -um, third.

**Thrācēs**, -um, *m.*, the Thracians, a nation dwelling to the north of ancient Greece.

**Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc. sing.*, -im), the Tiber.

**Tillius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tillius (Cimber), one of the murderers of Julius Caesar.

**timeō**, 2, -uī, be afraid, fear, be apprehensive; fear, be afraid of, be in fear of.

- timor**, -ōris, *m.*, fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). *sine timōre*, with no thought of danger, unconcerned.
- tolerō**, *i.*, keep at bay; tide over (112).
- tollō**, *3.*, sustulī, sublātus, raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). *Pass.*, (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). *Partic. as adj.*, sublātus, -a, -um, puffed up (108).
- tot**, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.
- tōtūs**, -a, -um, whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.
- tractō**, *i.*, handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engaged in (40).
- trādō**, *3.*, -didi, -ditus, give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). *trāditum est*, it is related (stated, *lit.* handed down); the story runs (88).
- trādūcō**, *3.*, -dūxi, -ductus, take across, bring across.
- trägula**, -ae, *f.*, dart.
- träns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, over.
- tränsēō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).
- tränsportō**, *i.*, take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).
- Trasumennus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a lake of central Italy.
- trēs**, trēs, tria, three.
- Trēverī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* (with or without mīlitum), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).
- tribütum**, -ī, *n.*, tribute, tax,
- trīdūum**, -ī, *n.*, three days.
- trīgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, thirty.
- tū**, tūi, you; *reflexive*, yourself (14).
- tulī**, see ferō.
- Tullius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tu'llius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7): for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also **cum** (*conj.*).
- tumultus**, -ūs, *m.*, alarm, confusion.
- turma**, -ae, *f.*, company (of cavalry), squadron. (*A turma enrolled about 30 men.*)
- turris**, -is, *f.*, (*acc. sing.* -im), tower.
- tūtō**, *adv.*, safely, in safety.
- tūtūs**, -a, -um, safe; (place) of safety.
- ubi**, *adv.*; (*interrogative*) where? (*Relative*) where; upon which (11), in which (33); beginning a new sentence, there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. (*cf. what is said of the translation of the relative qui*).
- ubi**, *conj.*, when. *ubi prīnum*, on the first occasion that, the first time that.
- üllus**, -a, -um, any; some (65); a single (137). *nē üllus*, that no; *nec üllus*, and . . . no, and . . . none.
- ulterior**, -ior, -ius, farther; *in some proper names*, South (60, 70).
- Superl.*, **ultimus**, -a, -um, last, final.
- ultimus**, -a, -um, see **ulterior**.
- ultrō**, *adv.*, voluntarily, actually. **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth, up and down.
- ululātus**, -ūs, *m.*, yell, cry, shriek, war-whoop.

**Umbrēnus, -i, m.**, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

**umerus, -i, m.**, shoulder.

**umquam, adv.**, ever. **neque umquam**, and never.

**ūnā, adv.**, together. **ūnā cum, with abl.**, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

**Uncās, -ae, m.**, the name of an Indian chief.

**unde, adv.**, whence, from which, from whence; from thence (39).

**ūndecimus, -a, -um**, eleventh.

**ūndēvigintī, indeclinable adj.**, nineteen.

**undique, adv.**, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

**ūniversi, -ae, -a, all**, one and all, in a body.

**ūnus, -a, -um**, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126).

*As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132). **ad ūnum**, to a man, to the last man, utterly.

**urbs, urbis, f.**, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

**usque, adv.**, even. **usque ad, with acc.**, as far as, even to; until.

**ūsus, -ūs, m.**, use, assistance, service; experience (133). **ūsuī esse, (freely)**, be useful, be helpful, be used; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also *veniō*.

**ūsus, -a, -um**, see *ūtor*.

**ut, uti, conj.; (causal)** inasmuch as (126): (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that; for the

purposē (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing): (*relative*), as; (just) as (135): (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110): (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

**uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two)**, either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two). **uti**, see *ut*.

**Utica, -ae, f.**, the name of an African city.

**ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, with abl.**, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129). **uxor, -ōris, f.**, wife; squaw.

**vagor, i.**, wander, drift.

**valētūdō, -inis, f.**, health.

**validus, -a, -um**, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

**vallēs, -is, f.**, valley, glade.

**vällum, -i, n.**, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

**varius, -a, -um**, varying, various, of various kinds.

**Vārus, -i, m.**, see *Attius*.

**Vasingtō, -ōnis, m.**, (George) Washington.

**-ve, conj.**, or; and (120).

**vectus, -a, -um**, see *vehō*.

**vehementer, adv.**, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

**vehō, 3, vēxi, vectus, carry, bring,**

convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. **equō vectus**, on horseback.

**vel**, conj. and adv.; with superl. of adjs. or advs., even (98). **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or, both . . . and.

**vēlūm**, -ī, n., sail. See also **dō**.

**vēndō**, 3, **vēndidī**, **vēnditus**, sell.

**venēnum**, -ī, n., poison.

**venia**, -ae, f., pardon.

**veniō**, 4, **vēni**, **ventum est**, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); with in and acc., arrive (in). **auxiliō venire**, (*freely*) come to help; with a second dat., come to the help (of): in **dēditiō nem venire**, surrender; in **manūs venire**, with gen., fall into the hands (of): **subsidiō venire**, (*freely*) come to the rescue; with a second dat., come (go) to the help (of): **ūsū venire**, be experienced, happen (133) (*ūsū is perhaps an irregular dat. form*).

**vēnor**, 1, hunt.

**ventus**, -ī, m., wind.

**verbum**, -ī, n., word.

**vereor**, 2, -itus sum, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, **veritus**, -a, -um, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.

**vērō**, conj., indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).

**Verrēs**, -is, m., (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.

**versor**, 1, be involved, be; move about; bear a part (79).

**versus**, see ad . . . **versus**.

**Verticō**, -ōnis, m., the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.

**vertō**, 3, **verti**, **versus**, turn. **terga vertere**, wheel about.

**vesper**, -erī and -eris, m., evening. **sub vesperum**, toward evening.

**vestigium**, -ī, n., track, mark. See also **insequor** and **sequor**.

**vestimentum**, -ī, n., garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.

**vestis**, -is, f., clothing.

**veterānī**, -ōrum, m., veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.

**vetus**, -eris, adj., old-time, one-time.

**via**, -ae, f., route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).

**vīcīnus**, -ī, m., neighbor.

**victōria**, -ae, f., victory.

**victus**, -a, -um, see **vincō**.

**vīcūs**, -ī, m., village, hamlet.

**videō**, 2, **vidī**, **visus**, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).

**videor**, 2, **visus sum**, seem, appear. Used impersonally, **vidētur**, seem best (103).

**vigilia**, -ae, f., watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).

**vigilō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).

**vīgīntī**, indeclinable adj., twenty.

**vīlla**, -ae, f., farmhouse; farm (53).

**vincō**, 3, **vīci**, **victus**, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, **victus**, -a, -um, defeated, beaten.

**vinculum**, -ī, n., chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.

**vir**, **virī**, m., man, gentleman; husband (73). **vir Britannicus**, (an) Englishman; **vir Rōmānus**, (a) Roman

**Virginia**, -ae, f., Virginia.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).

**vis**, —, *f.*, force (73), violence (131);

vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136): amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.*, strength. See also *capiō*.

**vita**, -ae, *f.*, life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also *agō*.

**vitō**, *i.*, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).

**vivō**, *3*, **vixī**, victum est, live; eke out an existence (39).

**vīvus**, -a, -um, alive (132). *As noun*, **vīvī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the living (91).

**vix**, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.

**vocō**, *i.*, call, summon, invite; call, name. in iūs **vocāre**, prosecute, bring to trial (45).

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. **nec velle**, and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).

**vōx**, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).

**vulnerō**, *i.*, wound. *Partic. as adj.*, **vulnerātus**, -a, -um, wounded; *as noun*, **vulnerātī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the wounded.

**vulnus**, -eris, *n.*, wound, injury.

**vultus**, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, expression.

# PEARSON'S LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School,  
Teachers College, New York.

Complete . . . . .	\$1.00
Part II, Based on Caesar . . . . .	.50
Part III, Based on Cicero . . . . .	.50

**T**HIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. It meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

¶ Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

¶ Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. Part III presents material for translation into Latin based upon Cicero. There are also exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

¶ A valuable feature of the book is the Review Lessons, introduced at intervals. These contain lists of important words for vocabulary study, and together with the summaries of grammatical principles afford excellent material for review work and practice in sight translation. For purposes of emphasis and intensive study, typical Latin sentences, illustrating important grammatical usages, idioms, and phrases are placed at the head of each chapter based on Books I and II of Caesar and the first Catilian oration of Cicero.

---

A M E R I C A N   B O O K   C O M P A N Y

# MORRIS & MORGAN'S LATIN SERIES FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

- ESSENTIALS OF LATIN FOR BEGINNERS. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.
- A SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.
- A FIRST LATIN WRITER. M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.
- CONNECTED PASSAGES FOR LATIN PROSE WRITING. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.
- CAESAR. EPISODES FROM THE GALLIC AND CIVIL WARS. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University. \$1.25.
- CICERO. TEN ORATIONS WITH EXTRACTS FROM THE EPISTLES TO SERVE AS ILLUSTRATIONS. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Nathan W. Helm, Phillips Exeter Academy, Exeter, N. H. \$1.25.
- CICERO. SIX ORATIONS. Bishop, King, and Helm. \$1.00.
- SELECTIONS FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS FOR SIGHT READING. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 40 cents.
- CICERO. CATO MAIOR. Frank G. Moore, Dartmouth College. 80 cents.
- CICERO. LAELIUS DE AMICITIA. Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.
- SELECTIONS FROM LIVY. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.
- HORACE. ODES AND EPODES. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.
- HORACE. SATIRES. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.. \$1.00.
- PLINY'S LETTERS. Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.
- TIBULLUS. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.
- LUCRETIUS. William A. Merrill, University of California. \$2.25.
- LATIN LITERATURE OF THE EMPIRE. Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
- Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius . . . . . \$1.80  
Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus . . . 1.80
- SELECTIONS FROM THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE LAW OF THE ROMANS. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School. \$1.25.

*Others to be announced later*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# VIRGIL'S AENEID

Edited by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin, University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER H. DENNISON, Professor of Latin, University of Michigan

First Six Books . . . . .	\$1.30	Complete . . . . .	\$1.50
Complete Text Edition . . \$0.50			

**I**N its present form this well-known work has been thoroughly revised and modernized. It is published in two volumes: one containing the first six books, the other the entire twelve books—an arrangement especially convenient for students who read more than the minimum College Entrance Requirements in Latin. Both volumes are printed on very thin opaque paper, thus making each an extraordinarily compact and usable book.

¶ The introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

¶ The text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

¶ The notes have been thoroughly revised, and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected, and new ones added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are given with sufficient explanations.

¶ The vocabulary has been made as simple as possible, and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The illustrations and maps, for the most part, are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care, with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# A NEW CICERO

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University; assisted by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor in Phillips Exeter Academy; and G. H. WILLIAMS, Professor in Kalamazoo College, late Instructor in Phillips Exeter Academy

Nine Oration Edition . . \$1.25

Six Oration Edition . . \$1.00

FOR convenience this edition of Cicero has been published in two forms. The larger edition includes the four orations against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. The smaller edition contains the first six of these orations, which are those required by the College Entrance Examination Board, and by the New York State Education Department.

¶ Before the text of each oration is a special introduction, which is intended to awaken the interest of the student by furnishing him with information in regard to the oration.

¶ The general introduction presents an outline of the life of Cicero, a brief history of Roman oratory, a chronological table of contemporaneous Roman history, a short account of the main divisions of the Roman people, the powers and the duties of magistrates, of the senate, of the popular assemblies, and of the courts of justice.

¶ The notes give the student the key to all really difficult passages, and at the same time furnish him with such collateral information upon Roman manners and customs, upon Roman history and life, as will enable him to understand, appreciate, and enjoy these masterpieces of Roman oratory. The grammatical references are to all the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The vocabulary gives the primary meanings of words, with such other meanings as the student will need in translating the orations. Special attention is devoted to the important subject of etymology. There are many maps and illustrations.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# LATIN DICTIONARIES

## HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon. Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.  
Royal Octavo, 2030 pages. Sheep, \$6.50; Full Russia, \$10.00

¶ The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

## LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Large Octavo, 1200 pages. Cloth, \$4.50; Half Leather, \$5.00

¶ This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

## LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather . . . . . \$2.00

¶ This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

## SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.  
Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep . . . . . \$4.00

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# SELECTIONS FROM THE WORKS OF OVID

Edited by FRANK J. MILLER, Ph.D. (Yale),  
Professor of Latin, University of Chicago

Annotated Edition . . . \$1.40	Text Edition . . . \$0.50
--------------------------------	---------------------------

THESE selections are fairly representative, and are edited in such a way as to illustrate the style and subject-matter of each poem, and at the same time to show the exact relation of every part to the complete work.

The book includes over 3,800 lines from the Metamorphoses, thus more than meeting the requirements in Ovid of the College Entrance Examination Board, and in addition the following: Selections from Heroides, Amores, Ars Amatoria, Remedia Amoris, Fasti, Tristia, and Epistulae ex Ponto; Life of Ovid, Poetic Forms of Ovid's Works; with notes on the selections, and vocabulary.

The notes have been prepared with special reference to the needs of both the school and the college student. They include: General assistance in the translation of difficult and obscure passages; judicious references on points of syntax to all the modern school grammars in common use; notes and comments upon points of antiquarian interest; and suggestions and illustrations of the relations of Ovid's stories to their earlier sources, and especially of their effect upon English literature.

The vocabulary, which has been prepared especially for this volume, gives the literal meaning of each word, and also all of the typical meanings which occur in the text. Generous assistance in word derivation is offered as well.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

OM  
DVID

D. (Yale  
Chicago

— & —

, and in  
style and  
the time to  
complex

the Me-  
ts in Oni  
in addition  
ores, An  
istulae et  
rks; with

ference to  
They  
difficult  
of syntax  
; ; notes  
and sug-  
gestions to  
English

peculiar  
word  
in the  
offered

—  
NY  
—





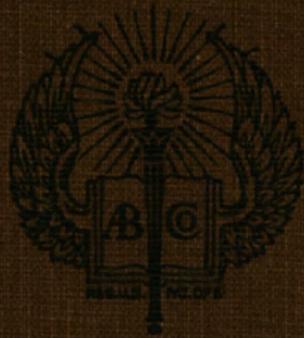


This book should be returned to  
the Library on or before the last date  
stamped below.

A fine is incurred by retaining it  
beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

MAY 16 '62 H



Royal Society of Chemistry